

# Pinnacle Studio 10 Plus

*Including Studio SE, Studio and Studio Plus*

***Easy, MORE Powerful,  
MORE Creative Video Editing***

**ENGLISH**

Special thanks to Mike Iampietro, William Chien, Richard Edgley, Ivan Maltz, Keith Thomson, Jörg Weselmann, and Chris Zamara.

Documentation: Nick Sullivan

Copyright © 1996-2005 Pinnacle Systems, Inc. and its licensors. All rights reserved. You agree not to remove any product identification or notices of the property restrictions from Pinnacle Systems' products or manuals. Pinnacle Systems, Pinnacle Studio Plus, TitleDeko, RTFx and VST are registered trademarks and/or trademarks of Pinnacle Systems, Inc. and its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. © 1992-2005 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved. Dolby is a trademark of Dolby Laboratories. mpegable DS 2.2 © 2005 Dicas Digital Image Coding GmbH. Pentium, Centrino, the Intel Centrino logo and the Intel Inside logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries. QDesign MPEG-1 Layer 2 Fast Encoder/Decoder © 1996-2005 by QDesign Corporation. QuickTime and the QuickTime logo are trademarks used under license. The QuickTime logo is registered in the U.S. and other countries. The RealProducer is included under license from RealNetworks, Inc. Real Producer version 8.0. copyright 1995-2005, RealNetworks, Inc. "RealProducer", "RealVideo", "RealServer", and "Real" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of RealNetworks, Inc. All rights reserved. SmartSound is a registered trademark of SmartSound Inc.

Windows Media is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

No part of this manual may be copied or distributed, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any human or computer language, in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, manual, or otherwise, without the express written permission of Pinnacle Systems, Inc.

Pinnacle Systems, Inc.  
280 North Bernardo Avenue  
Mountain View, CA 94943

Printed in the USA.

# Table of contents

<b>BEFORE YOU START .....</b>	<b>XI</b>
Equipment requirements.....	xi
Abbreviations and conventions.....	xiii
On-line help .....	xv
<b>CHAPTER 1: USING STUDIO .....</b>	<b>1</b>
Undo, Redo, Help, Support and Premium .....	3
Setting options .....	4
<b>Edit mode .....</b>	<b>5</b>
The Player.....	6
Playback controls.....	8
Further editing topics.....	11
Expanding Studio .....	11
<b>CHAPTER 2: CAPTURING VIDEO.....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>The Capture mode interface.....</b>	<b>19</b>
The Diskometer .....	21
The Camcorder Controller.....	22
<b>The capture process.....</b>	<b>23</b>
Capture hardware.....	23
Capture step-by-step.....	25
Scene detection .....	27
<b>Digital capture .....</b>	<b>28</b>
Audio and video levels – digital .....	30

<b>Analog capture.....</b>	<b>30</b>
Capture quality options.....	31
Audio and video levels – analog.....	31

<b>Importing video from DVD .....</b>	<b>33</b>
---------------------------------------	-----------

## **CHAPTER 3: THE ALBUM..... 35**

<b>The Video Scenes section .....</b>	<b>38</b>
Opening a captured video file.....	40
Viewing captured video.....	43
Selecting scenes and files .....	45
Displaying scene and file information.....	46
Comment view.....	46
Combining and subdividing scenes .....	48
Redetecting scenes.....	50

<b>The Transitions section .....</b>	<b>51</b>
--------------------------------------	-----------

<b>The Titles section.....</b>	<b>53</b>
--------------------------------	-----------

<b>The Still Images section .....</b>	<b>54</b>
---------------------------------------	-----------

<b>The Disc Menus section.....</b>	<b>55</b>
------------------------------------	-----------

<b>The Sound Effects section.....</b>	<b>57</b>
---------------------------------------	-----------

<b>The Music section.....</b>	<b>58</b>
-------------------------------	-----------

## **CHAPTER 4: THE MOVIE WINDOW..... 59**

<b>Movie Window views.....</b>	<b>62</b>
Storyboard view.....	63
Timeline view .....	63
Text view .....	67

<b>The toolboxes .....</b>	<b>68</b>
The Video toolbox .....	69
The Audio toolbox.....	71

<b>CHAPTER 5: VIDEO CLIPS .....</b>	<b>73</b>
<b>Video clip basics .....</b>	<b>74</b>
Adding video clips to your movie .....	74
Working with multiple capture files .....	76
The project video format .....	77
Interface features .....	79
<b>Trimming video clips.....</b>	<b>81</b>
Trimming on the Timeline using handles .....	81
Clip-trimming tips .....	85
Trimming with the <i>Clip properties</i> tool.....	86
Resetting trimmed clips .....	88
<b>Splitting and combining clips .....</b>	<b>89</b>
<b>Advanced Timeline editing .....</b>	<b>90</b>
Insert editing.....	92
Split editing .....	94
<b>Using video effects .....</b>	<b>98</b>
Working with the effects list.....	99
Changing effect parameters .....	101
Keyframing .....	103
Using keyframing .....	106
Previewing and rendering .....	108
<b>Video effects library .....</b>	<b>109</b>
<b>Standard effects .....</b>	<b>111</b>
Auto color correction.....	111
Noise reduction.....	112
Stabilize .....	112
Speed .....	113
<b>Plus effects.....</b>	<b>114</b>
Blur.....	114
Emboss .....	115
Old film .....	115
Soften.....	116
Stained glass .....	116
Luma key .....	116

2D Editor .....	117
Earthquake .....	117
Lens flare .....	117
Magnify .....	118
Motion blur .....	118
Water drop .....	118
Water wave .....	119
Black and white .....	119
Color correction .....	119
Invert .....	120
Lighting .....	120
Posterize .....	120
RGB color balance.....	121
Sepia .....	121
White balance .....	121
<b>The SmartMovie music video tool.....</b>	<b>122</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6: TWO-TRACK EDITING .....</b>	<b>125</b>
Introducing the <i>overlay</i> track.....	125
A/B editing .....	127
The Picture-in-picture tool.....	128
The Chroma key tool.....	133
Selecting colors .....	140
<b>CHAPTER 7: TRANSITIONS.....</b>	<b>141</b>
Transition types and their uses .....	142
Previewing transitions in your movie .....	145
Audio transitions .....	146
The Ripple Transition command .....	147
<b>Trimming transitions .....</b>	<b>148</b>
Trimming with the <i>Clip properties</i> tool.....	148
<b>CHAPTER 8: STILL IMAGES.....</b>	<b>151</b>
<b>Editing still images .....</b>	<b>154</b>
Editing image clip properties.....	154
<b>The Frame Grabber .....</b>	<b>161</b>
The Frame grabber tool .....	161

<b>CHAPTER 9: DISC MENUS.....</b>	<b>165</b>
Disc authoring in Studio.....	167
Using menus from the Album.....	169
The DVD Player Control.....	171
Editing menus on the Timeline.....	172
Editing with the <i>Clip properties</i> tool.....	174
The <i>Disc menu</i> tool.....	179
<b>CHAPTER 10: THE TITLE EDITOR .....</b>	<b>181</b>
Launching the Title Editor.....	182
<b>The Title Editor controls .....</b>	<b>183</b>
Title-type buttons.....	183
Object toolbox .....	184
Editing-mode selection buttons .....	187
Object layout buttons.....	189
Clipboard and delete buttons .....	191
Text-styling controls.....	191
<b>The Title Editor Album .....</b>	<b>193</b>
The Looks Browser .....	193
The Backgrounds section.....	195
The Pictures section.....	197
The Buttons section .....	198
<b>CHAPTER 11: SOUND EFFECTS AND MUSIC.....</b>	<b>201</b>
The Timeline audio tracks .....	203
The <i>CD audio</i> tool.....	205
The <i>SmartSound</i> tool.....	206
The <i>Voice-over</i> tool.....	208
<b>Trimming audio clips .....</b>	<b>211</b>
Trimming with the <i>Clip properties</i> tool.....	211
<b>Audio volume and mixing.....</b>	<b>213</b>
Anatomy of an audio clip .....	213
Adjusting audio on the Timeline .....	216
The Volume and balance tool.....	218
<b>Audio effects.....</b>	<b>223</b>
Noise reduction.....	225

<b>Plus effects.....</b>	<b>226</b>
ChannelTool .....	226
Chorus .....	227
DeEsser.....	227
Equalizer.....	227
Grungelizer.....	228
Leveler.....	229
Reverb .....	230
Stereo Echo.....	230
Stereo Spread.....	230

## **CHAPTER 12: MAKING YOUR MOVIE..... 231**

<b>Output to disc media .....</b>	<b>233</b>
-----------------------------------	------------

<b>Output to file.....</b>	<b>237</b>
----------------------------	------------

<b>Output to tape.....</b>	<b>242</b>
----------------------------	------------

Configuring the camera or recorder.....	242
---	-----

Output your movie to videotape .....	243
--------------------------------------	-----

## **APPENDIX A: SETUP OPTIONS ..... 245**

Capture source settings.....	246
------------------------------	-----

Capture format settings.....	250
------------------------------	-----

Project preferences .....	253
---------------------------	-----

Video and audio preferences .....	257
-----------------------------------	-----

Make Disc settings .....	262
--------------------------	-----

Make File settings.....	265
-------------------------	-----

Make Real Media file settings .....	270
-------------------------------------	-----

Make Windows Media file settings .....	273
--	-----

Make tape settings .....	274
--------------------------	-----

## **APPENDIX B: TIPS AND TRICKS ..... 277**

Hardware .....	277
----------------	-----

Software.....	279
---------------	-----

Increasing the frame rate .....	280
---------------------------------	-----

Studio and computer animation.....	281
------------------------------------	-----

<b>APPENDIX C: TROUBLESHOOTING .....</b>	<b>283</b>
<b>Technical help on-line .....</b>	<b>284</b>
Studio crashes in Edit mode .....	287
Capture error occurs on starting capture.....	292
Studio hangs when rendering.....	294
CD or DVD burner is not detected .....	298
Studio hangs on launch or won't launch.....	299
"Cannot initialize the DV capture device" error appears in Capture mode .....	300
<b>Installation problems .....</b>	<b>303</b>
<b>Operation problems .....</b>	<b>304</b>
<b>APPENDIX D: VIDEOGRAPHY TIPS .....</b>	<b>311</b>
Creating a shooting plan .....	311
Editing .....	312
Rules of thumb for video editing .....	316
Soundtrack production.....	318
Title .....	319
<b>APPENDIX E: GLOSSARY.....</b>	<b>321</b>
<b>APPENDIX F: LICENSE AGREEMENT .....</b>	<b>339</b>
<b>APPENDIX G: KEYBOARD SHORTCUTS.....</b>	<b>343</b>
<b>INDEX .....</b>	<b>347</b>



# Before you start

Thank you for purchasing Pinnacle Studio. We hope you enjoy using the software.

This manual covers all versions of Studio, including Studio Plus. Differences between versions will be noted as applicable. Most of the time, the word “Studio” will be used generically to refer to all versions.

If you have not used Studio before, we recommend that you keep the manual handy for reference even if you don’t actually read it all the way through.

In order to ensure that your Studio experience gets off on the right foot, please review the three topics below before continuing to *Chapter 1: Using Studio*.

---

## Equipment requirements

---

In addition to your Studio software, here is what you need to make a Studio editing system.

### Computer

- Intel Pentium or AMD Athlon 1.4 GHz or higher (2.4 GHz or higher recommended)

- 512 MB of RAM (1 GB recommended; 1 GB required for HD)
- Windows XP
- DirectX 9 or higher compatible graphics card compatible with 32 MB (ATI Radeon or NVIDIA GeForce2 or higher with 128 MB recommended for SD; 128 MB required for 720p HD; 256 MB required for 1080i HD)
- DirectX 9 or compatible sound card (Creative Audigy or M-Audio recommended)
- 500 MB of disk space to install software plus 3 GB to install bonus content.
- DVD-ROM drive

**The following items are optional:**

- CD-R(W) burner for creating VCDs or S-VCDs
- DVD-/+R(W) burner drive for creating DVDs
- A microphone, if you want to record voice-overs

**Note:** HD video is supported by Studio Plus only.

**The hard drive**

Your hard drive must be capable of sustained reading and writing at 4 MB/sec. Most drives are capable of this. The first time you capture, Studio will test your drive to make sure it is fast enough. Video in the DV format occupies 3.6 MB of hard drive space per second, so just four and a half minutes of DV video will consume a full gigabyte on the drive.

**Tip:** We recommend using a separate hard drive dedicated to video capture. This avoids competition between Studio and other software, including Windows, for use of the drive during capture.

## Video capture hardware

Studio can capture video from a variety of digital and analog sources. See “Capture hardware” on page 23.

## Video output hardware

Studio can output video to:

- Any HDV, DV or Digital8 camcorder or VCR. This requires an OHCI-compliant IEEE-1394 (FireWire) port (as provided by Pinnacle Studio DV). The camcorder must be set up to record from DV Input.
- Any analog (8mm, Hi8, VHS, SVHS, VHS-C or SVHS-C) camcorder or VCR. This requires Pinnacle Studio USB-700, PCI-500, PCI-700, or another Pinnacle device with analog outputs. Output to analog camcorders or VCRs is also possible using a Pinnacle Studio DV or other OHCI-compliant 1394 port if your DV or Digital8 camcorder or VCR can pass a DV signal through to its analog outputs (see your camcorder manual and *Chapter 12: Making your movie*, for more information).

**Note:** HDV camcorders are supported by Studio Plus only.

---

## Abbreviations and conventions

---

This guide uses the following conventions to help organize the material.

### Terminology

**Studio:** “Studio” and “Studio Plus” refer to the editing software.

**DV:** The term “DV” refers to DV and Digital8 camcorders, VCRs and tapes.

**HDV:** A “high-definition video” format that allows video in frame sizes of 1280x720 or 1440x1080 to be recorded in MPEG-2 format on DV media.

**1394:** The term “1394” refers to OHCI-compliant IEEE-1394, FireWire, DV or i.LINK interfaces, ports and cables.

**Analog:** The term “analog” refers to 8mm, Hi8, VHS, SVHS, VHS-C or SVHS-C camcorders, VCRs and tapes, and to Composite/RCA and S-Video cables and connectors.

## **Buttons, menus, dialog boxes and windows**

Names of buttons, menus and related items are written in *italics* to distinguish them from the surrounding text, whereas window and dialog names are written with initial capital letters. For example:

Click the *Edit menu* button to open your menu in the Title Editor.

## **Choosing menu commands**

The right arrowhead symbol (➤) denotes the path for hierarchical menu items. For example:

Select *Toolbox* ➤ *Generate Background Music*.

## **Keyboard conventions**

Key names are spelled with an initial capital and are underlined. A plus sign denotes a key combination. For example:

Press Ctrl+A to select all the clips on the Timeline.

## Mouse clicks

When a mouse click is required, the default is always a left-click unless otherwise specified:

Right-click and select *Go to Title/Menu Editor*.

---

## On-line help

---

Two kinds of immediate help are always available while you are working in Studio:

- **Help file:** Click the *help* button  in the Studio main menu bar, **or** select the *Help* > *Help topics* menu, **or** press F1 to open Studio's help file.
- **Tool tips:** To find out what a button or other Studio control does, pause your mouse pointer over it. A “tool tip” appears explaining its function.



## CHAPTER 1:

---

# Using Studio

*Creating movies with Studio is a three-step process:*

**1. Capture:** Import source video material – your “raw footage” – to your PC hard drive. Possible sources include analog videotape (8mm, VHS etc.), digital videotape (HDV, DV, Digital8), and live video from a video camera, camcorder or webcam.

Capture mode is covered in *Chapter 2: Capturing video*.

<b>Availability:</b> HDV capture is supported in Studio Plus only.
--

**2. Edit:** Arrange your video material as desired by reordering scenes and discarding unwanted footage. Add visuals, such as transitions, titles and graphics, and supplementary audio, such as sound effects and background music. For DVD and VCD authoring, create interactive menus that give your audience a customized viewing experience.

Edit mode is the arena for most of your work in Studio. See “Edit mode” later in this chapter (page 5) for a fuller introduction.

## Studio Overview

### 1 Capture Mode



Camcorder or other video source

Import video to your computer's hard drive.



**Player:**  
Monitor your source video.

**Diskometer:**  
Monitor drive space while capturing.

### 2 Edit Mode



**Digital Media Files:**

Pictures - BMP, JPG, PCT, TGA, TIF, WMF  
Video - DV, HDV<sup>1</sup>, AVI, MPEG-1, MPEG-2,<sup>2</sup>  
MPEG-4<sup>3</sup>, DivX<sup>4</sup>, Windows Media Format,  
DVR-MS, MOD, non-encrypted DVDs  
Audio - WAV, MP3

**Video and Audio Toolboxes:**  
Fine-tune your clips and effects.

**Album:**  
Store resources for your production.

Organize your movie, adding audio, graphics and effects.



**Player:**  
Preview your movie with special effects and audio.

**Timeline:**  
Arrange your audio and video clips.  
Add special effects and transitions.  
**JUST DRAG AND DROP!**

### 3 Make Movie Mode

**Output Tabs:**  
Your options for movie output.

**Status Area:**  
Shows status of movie output.

Save your movie on the media of your choice.

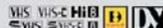


**Player:**  
Preview your final movie with titles, special effects and audio.

**Create:**  
CDs, DVDs and VCDs.

**Digital Output:**  
DV, HDV<sup>1</sup>, AVI, DivX<sup>4</sup>,  
FinalVideo 8, Windows Media 9,  
MPEG-1, MPEG-2, MPEG-4<sup>3</sup>  
files, Dolby Digital Video<sup>5</sup>

**Output to Video Tapes:**



<sup>1</sup> HD Video is supported in Studio Plus only.

<sup>2</sup> Capture, Import and Export of MPEG-2 files and DVD Titles and burning of VCD and DVDs require free product activation via internet at the first use.

<sup>3</sup> DivX, MPEG-4 and Dolby import or export requires the Advanced Codec Pack. You can activate the Advanced Codec Pack inside Studio at additional cost.

**3. Make movie:** When your project is complete, generate a finished movie in your choice of format and storage medium: tape, VCD, S-VCD, DVD, AVI, MPEG, RealVideo or Windows Media.

Make Movie mode is covered in *Chapter 12: Making your movie*.

## Setting the mode

Select which step of the movie-making process you want to work on by clicking one of the three *mode* buttons at the top left of the Studio window:



When you switch modes, the Studio screen changes to display the controls needed for the new mode.

---

## Undo, Redo, Help, Support and Premium

---

*The Undo, Redo, Help, Support and Premium buttons are always to be found in the top right corner of the Studio window, no matter which of the three modes you are currently working in.*



- *Undo* allows you to back out of any changes you have made to your project during the current session, one step at a time.
- *Redo* reinstates the changes one by one if you undo too far.
- The *Help* button launches Studio's built-in help system.

- The *Support* button opens Studio’s technical support site in your web browser.
- The *Premium* button lets you expand Studio by purchasing and installing premium content. (See page 11 for details.)

*All other controls on the Studio screen are dedicated to tasks within the current mode.*

---

## Setting options

---

*Options in Studio are set in two tabbed dialog boxes.*

The first lets you control options related to Capture mode and Edit mode. It has four tabs:



The other dialog box is concerned with options relating to Make Movie mode. It has three tabs, one for each of the three movie output types:



Each panel of both dialog boxes can be opened individually with a corresponding command on the *Setup* menu (e.g. *Setup* ➤ *Capture Source*). Once either dialog box is open, however, all of its panels are available through the tabs.

For simplicity, we generally refer to the different options panels independently, as in “the *Capture source* options panel”.

Detailed explanations of the options in both dialog boxes are contained in *Appendix A: Setup Options*.



## EDIT MODE

*Studio opens in Edit mode each time it is launched, because that is the mode you use most often. The Edit mode display includes three main areas.*

The Album stores resources you will use in your movies, including your captured video scenes.

The Movie Window is where you create your edited movie by arranging video and sound clips, and by applying transitions and effects.

The Player provides playback and previewing for whichever item is currently selected in Studio. That may be an Album resource – such as a video scene, title or sound effect – or your edited movie, complete with transitions, titles, effects and several audio tracks. The Player is covered below.

See *Chapter 3: The Album* and *Chapter 4: The Movie Window* for detailed information on those topics.



---

## The Player

---

*The Player displays a preview of your edited movie, or of the item currently selected in the Album.*

It consists of two main areas: a *preview window* and *playback controls*. The preview window displays video images. The playback controls allow you to play the video, or go to an exact position within it. These controls come in two formats: *standard* and *DVD*.

### Standard mode

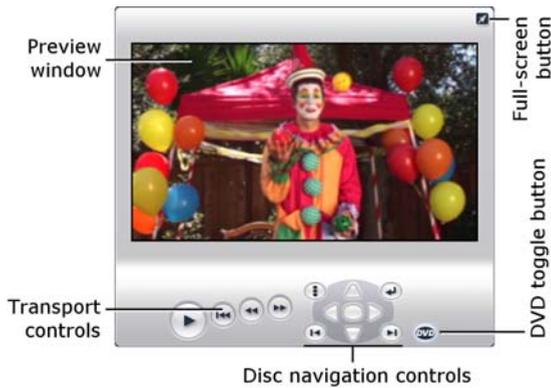
The standard playback controls are similar to those on a camcorder or VCR. They are used for viewing ordinary video.



### DVD mode

The DVD playback controls emulate the navigation controls on a DVD player or remote control. Use them

for previewing your DVD, VCD or S-VCD disc productions, including menu interaction.



## The preview window

This is a point of focus in Studio because you use it so often, especially for previewing your movie. It can also be used to display:

- Any type of Album content.
- Still images or titles from your movie.
- Changes to video effects in real time while you adjust the parameter controls for the effects.
- Still frames from your video.

While viewing a still frame, you can step by as little as a single frame in either direction with the “jog” controls.

## The *DVD toggle* button

Switch between the two playback modes with the *DVD toggle* button at the bottom right-hand corner of the Player. This button is only available when your edited movie contains at least one menu. 

---

## Playback controls

---

*The Player presents either of two sets of playback controls depending on the playback mode you choose.*

When you play your movie back as ordinary video, you will be using the *standard playback controls*. If your movie uses disc menu navigation, you can play it back as an optical disc with interactive on-screen menus by using the *DVD playback controls*. Both groups of controls are covered below.

*The full-screen preview button:* This button, just  above the top right-hand corner of the preview window, switches to a full-screen preview. It is available in both playback modes. On a single-monitor system, the full-screen display ends when your movie ends, or you double-click the screen or press the Esc key. See the *Video preview* options in the Video and Audio Preferences panel (page 257) for settings that apply to multiple-monitor systems.

The *Video preview* options on the *Video and audio preferences* options panel let you direct the full-screen preview to the secondary monitor on your system if there is one. In Studio Plus, you can simultaneously send your preview to an external device, if desired.

### Standard playback controls

These buttons control playback in the Player.

*Play / Pause:* The *Play* button previews the movie from the current position. Once preview begins, *Play* becomes *Pause*. When playback is paused, the Album scene or Movie Window clip at which previewing stopped remains selected. The [Space] key can also be used to start and stop playback.  

*Go to beginning:* This button halts playback and skips back to the first frame of the material being previewed.



*Fast reverse, Fast forward:* These buttons let you preview your movie at two, four or ten times the normal speed, in either direction. Use them to scan for a particular piece of video you want to work with. Click the buttons repeatedly to loop through the speed factors.



*Loop:* This button causes the currently-selected clips in the Movie Window to play back repeatedly. This feature is especially convenient whilst selecting and editing add-on effects and transitions. Click any playback button to halt looping. The loop button lights up while looping is active. Looping is maintained even if you switch playback speeds.



*Jog buttons:* This pair of controls normally steps your movie forward and backward by one frame at a time. To step by seconds, minutes or hours instead of frames, select the corresponding field in the counter (see below), then use the jog buttons to modify it.



## The Player scrubber

Use the Player scrubber to quickly traverse your captured video or edited movie in either direction. The scrubber position corresponds to the position of the current frame in the captured video file (*not* just the current scene) or in the edited movie (*not* just the current clip). Thus the scrubber bar always represents the entire length of the content being viewed.



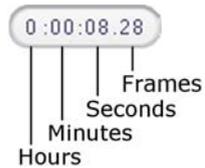
As you move the scrubber, the preview window shows the current frame. If you have activated the *audio scrubbing* button in the Movie Window, you will also

hear snatches of your movie's audio as you scrub. See page 60 for details.

The ability of the preview to keep up with the scrubber depends on the speed of your computer. If you move the Player scrubber slowly, the preview display responds smoothly. As you increase the rate at which you move the scrubber, the preview will jump frames. The point at which it does so depends on your hardware. The smoothness of the preview also diminishes as the overall length of the material being scrubbed increases.

### The counter

The *counter* displays the current playback position in hours, minutes, seconds and frames. You can directly modify the counter fields to select an exact frame to view or at which to start playback. Simply click on the number you wish to change and type a new value. To move to a different field, click again or use the Left and Right arrow keys.



You can also modify the value in a selected field by using the jog buttons beside the counter or the Up and Down arrow keys.

### The master volume slider



This control sets the overall audio volume during preview playback. It is equivalent to turning up the master volume on your sound card using the system volume tool. It does not affect the volume of the final movie Studio creates in Make Movie mode.

The small loudspeaker icon at the right of the control serves as a *master mute* button during playback.

## DVD playback controls



These controls include the four standard transport buttons detailed above (*Play/Pause*, *Fast reverse*, *Fast forward*, *Go to beginning*) plus the *DVD Player Control*, which is described under “The DVD Player Control” on page 171.

---

## Further editing topics

---

Please see the following for details on specific editing topics:

- Chapter 5: Video clips
- Chapter 6: Two-track editing with Studio Plus
- Chapter 7: Transitions
- Chapter 8: Still images
- Chapter 9: Disc menus
- Chapter 10: The Title Editor
- Chapter 11: Sound effects and music

---

## Expanding Studio

---

One way to add pizzazz to your productions is to use a variety of video and audio filters, animated transitions, titles, VCD and DVD menus, and sound effects.

Studio includes an extensive selection of hundreds of content items and special effects, but it’s also designed to grow along with your needs. When you want a

particular filter, transition, menu or effect that isn't part of the basic set, an easy-to-use upgrade mechanism lets you find, purchase and install the materials you need without even leaving the program.



Most of the premium content available for Studio does not even require downloading. Studio's Bonus Content DVD includes numerous items, like the Hollywood FX transition at left, that initially appear as "bonus" content in Studio, symbolized by a small treasure chest symbol in the top-left corner of the icon. Such items can be upgraded by purchasing a code called an *activation key*. Each key activates a small group or *theme pack* of related content.

Additional items of premium content will be provided for download as they become available. These items can be sampled and purchased within Studio using the same activation method as for the premium content included with the program installation.

You can easily try out bonus content before purchase to make sure that it meets your needs. Until you actually purchase your activation code for the item, it will produce "watermarked" output when you preview or when you make your finished movie.

## **New tools, new media, new frontiers**

You can purchase additional media and filters in any of three ways from within Studio:

- With the *Help* ➤ *Purchase activation keys* menu command (or the *premium* shortcut button at the top right of the Studio screen).



This opens a special browser window in which you can access a catalog page for any type of premium content that interests you.

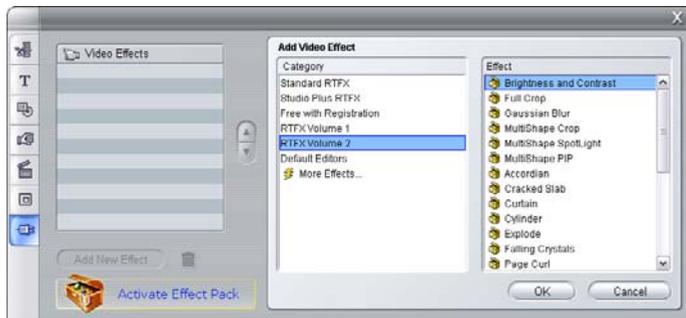
- With the Album commands *More transitions*, *More sound effects* and *More menus*.

These commands are found on the dropdown lists in the corresponding sections of the Album. They will enable you to download, try out and purchase additional premium content that was not included with the program installation.

- By clicking the *activate* buttons found in some parts of Studio.

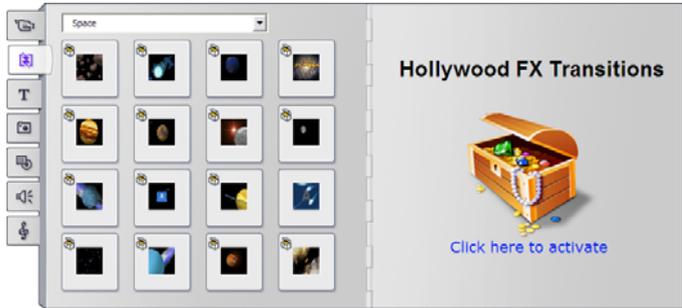


These buttons can be found whenever premium content is on display within Studio. The one above, when seen in the *Audio effects* tool and the *Video effects* tool, would let you activate a pack of audio or video filters.



Here, the “RTFX Volume 2” page is open in the Video Effects tool. The Activate Effect Pack button could now be used to unlock the effects in this set.

Similar buttons in the Album let you purchase all the media on a particular Album page as a theme pack.



*The Transitions section of the Album, open to one of the many theme packs of Hollywood FX transitions. Click anywhere in the activation panel on the right-hand page to activate this set of transitions.*

## How activation works

“Activating” premium content for Studio means to obtain a license allowing you unrestricted use of the content on the single machine where Studio is installed. The licensing mechanism employs two distinct but mutually related codes:

- An *activation key* for each premium content item you purchase;
- Your *Passport*, which is a number generated the first time you install Studio on your computer. You can view your Passport by selecting the *Help* ➤ *My Passport* menu command.

Because the Passport is specific to one computer, you will need to obtain new activation keys if you install Studio on a different machine. These will be provided at no charge, but your user licenses for both Studio and any premium content you have obtained then apply to the new machine only.

**Note:** Although your Passport is specific to an individual computer, it is not affected by ordinary hardware modifications such as adding or removing expansion cards, drives or memory.

## **If you don't have an Internet connection...**

You can purchase and apply premium content activation keys even if you don't have an Internet connection on the computer where Studio is installed. When you click one of the unlock links within Studio, a dialog will be displayed showing information needed for ordering the specific content you want, including:

- An Internet URL where you can activate the content
- Numeric identifiers for the Studio program and the item you want to activate
- Your Passport and your Serial Number

Navigate to the given URL from another computer, enter the information, and complete the purchase as directed. You will then be given an activation key with which you can activate the content on the original computer by using the *Help* ➤ *Enter Activation Keys* menu command.

## **Hiding and showing premium content**

If you would prefer not to view the premium content and features available in Studio, open the *Project preferences* options panel and uncheck either or both of *Show premium content* and *Show premium features*. (See page 253.)



## CHAPTER 2:

# Capturing video

*Capture* is the process of importing video from a video source such as a camcorder to a file on your PC's hard drive. Clips from this “capture file” can then be used in Studio as ingredients of your edited movies.

You can open capture files into the Album in Studio's Edit mode (see *Chapter 3: The Album*).



*Capture is the first step in using your video footage.*

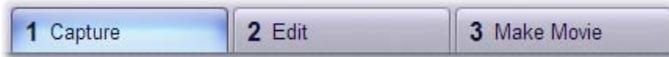
Studio is able to capture from both digital (DV, Digital8, HDV) and analog video sources.

See “Capture hardware” on page 23 for details on configuring Studio to capture from your equipment.

**Availability:** Capturing video from HDV camcorders is supported in Studio Plus only.

## Switching to Capture mode

The very first step in capturing is to switch into Studio's Capture mode by clicking the *Capture* button at the top of the screen.



This opens the Capture mode interface, enabling you to set up and carry out video capture. The details of the interface are somewhat different for analog than for digital video sources.

---

## Topics in this chapter

---

- “The Capture mode interface” (below) introduces the controls and displays for both analog and digital captures.
- “The Capture Process” (page 23) covers setting up your hardware, gives step-by-step capturing instructions, and describes the *automatic scene detection* feature.
- “Digital capture” (page 28) and “Analog capture” (page 30) cover topics specific to each type of source.
- Another method of obtaining video material, although it isn't capture in the strict sense, and doesn't require using Studio's Capture mode, is to import files from a DVD disc or image. This operation is carried out using the *File > Import DVD Titles* menu command. See page 33 for details.



# THE CAPTURE MODE INTERFACE

The tools and controls you see in Capture mode are different depending on whether your capture hardware is digital or analog.

## Digital capture

If your video source is digital, your Capture mode screen will look like this:



The Album, at the top left of the screen, displays icons representing the video scenes as they are captured. The Player, at top right, lets you view the incoming video while cueing for capture, and monitor the capture itself. Readouts on the Player tell you the exact length of the captured video, and the number of frames dropped during the capture (normally zero).

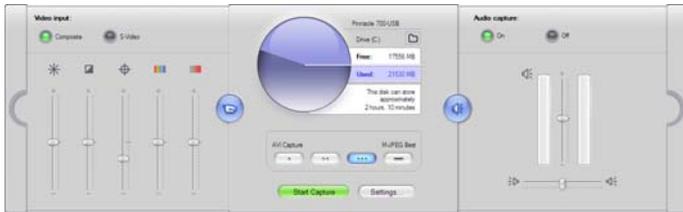
The Camcorder Controller, at bottom left, provides a tape counter display and a set of transport controls for operating the playback device. Finally, the Diskometer, at bottom right, displays the capture space remaining on the drive. It also provides the *Start Capture* button and buttons for setting capture options.

The Diskometer and the Camcorder Controller are described in detail beginning on page 21.

## Analog capture

Both the Album and the Player are used in analog as well as digital captures, so when you capture from an analog source the top half of the screen is the same as shown and described above for digital sources.

Not the bottom half of the screen, however. It now features a second version of the Diskometer, with two fly-out panels for adjusting audio and video levels during capture. (The panels are described under “Audio and video levels – analog” on page 31.)



## Digital vs. analog

To summarize, the digital and analog setups reflect two major differences in capability:

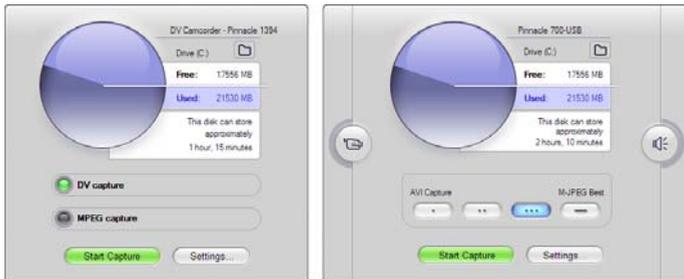
- The digital setup lets you control the tape transport of the camcorder or VCR using the Camcorder Controller.
- The analog setup lets you modify audio and video levels dynamically during capture.

---

## The Diskometer

---

The Diskometer displays, both numerically and graphically, the amount of space available on your capture drive. It also indicates the approximate duration of video that can be accommodated, which depends on both the available space and the configured *capture quality*. Capture quality settings are selected using the *preset* buttons that are displayed on the Diskometer for some capture devices, or by entering custom settings. See “Capture source settings” (page 246) and “Capture format settings” (page 250) for information on capture settings.



*The Diskometer when capturing from a digital source (L) and an analog source (R). Click the side tabs on the analog version to open fly-out panels for adjusting video and audio levels during capture.*

The *Start capture* button on the Diskometer begins and ends the capture process. The caption changes to *Stop capture* while the operation is in progress.

The default save location for captured video is your system’s *Shared video* directory.

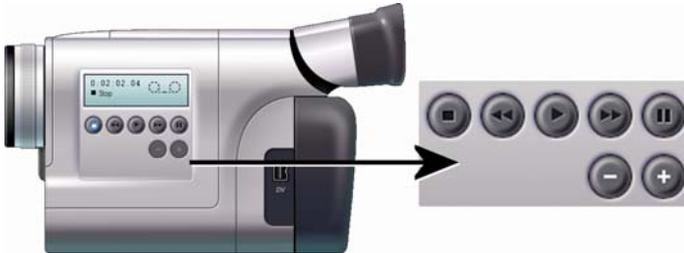
**Setting the capture directory:** To save captured video to a different location, click the *file folder* button . This displays the Select Folder And Default Name For Captured Video dialog. The folder you assign will be used to store captured video during this and future sessions. The file name you enter will be offered as the default file name on your next capture.

---

## The Camcorder Controller

---

This panel of transport controls is shown in Capture mode if you are capturing from a digital video source. (Analog devices must be cued and operated manually.)



*The Camcorder Controller and a close-up view of the transport controls. The counter window above the control buttons displays the current position of the source tape, along with the current transport mode of the camcorder.*

From left to right, the transport control buttons are: *Stop, Rewind / Review, Play, Fast forward / Cue and Pause.*

The *Frame reverse* and *Frame forward* buttons (second row) let you locate the exact frame you want. These two buttons are available only when the device is in pause mode.



## THE CAPTURE PROCESS

Studio lets you capture video from a variety of analog and digital hardware types. Choose the device you wish to use on the *Capture source* options panel. See “Capture hardware” (below) for more information.

Performing the actual capture is a straightforward step-by-step procedure (see page 25). As the capture proceeds, Studio automatically detects the natural breaks in the incoming video and divides the material into “scenes”. Each scene is added to the Album, where it is represented by an icon of its first frame. Automatic scene detection is described starting on page 27.

Some capture options apply to digital captures only or to analog captures only. These are covered in their own sections, “Digital capture” (page 28) and “Analog capture” (page 30).

---

### Capture hardware

---

Studio can capture digital and analog video from the following sources, depending on your hardware:

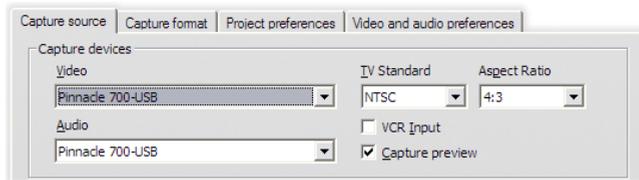
- **Digital:** A DV or Digital8 camcorder connected to an IEEE-1394 (FireWire) port. Capturing from HDV sources is additionally supported in Studio Plus.
- **Analog:** A camcorder or VCR with analog outputs connected to a DirectShow-compatible capture board or external device.
- **Analog:** A USB video camera or webcam.

Pinnacle Systems offers a complete line of DV, analog, and combination capture boards and devices. For more information see your dealer or visit our web-site:

[www.pinnaclesys.com](http://www.pinnaclesys.com)

### To select a capture device:

1. Click the *Setup* ➤ *Capture Source* menu command.  
The *Capture source* options panel appears.
2. Select the devices you want to use from the *Video* and *Audio* dropdown lists in the *Capture devices* area, and click *OK*.



See “*Capture source* settings” on page 246 for detailed information about the *Capture source* options panel.

### Standard vs. widescreen capture

Studio can capture in both the standard (4:3) and the widescreen (16:9) frame- aspect ratios. With digital hardware, the frame format is detected automatically. With analog hardware, you use the *Aspect ratio* dropdown on the *Capture source* options panel to select the format that matches the source material. You can't use this setting to change one format to another: it simply lets Studio know how to display the video at the correct aspect ratio.

---

## Capture step-by-step

---

Here is a step-by-step outline of the capture process. The instructions apply to both digital and analog captures, with differences noted as required.

Further information relating to some of the steps can be found elsewhere in this chapter. Also see *Appendix A: Setup Options* (page 245) for detailed descriptions of the *Capture source* and *Capture format* options panels.

### To capture video:

1. Verify that your equipment is properly connected.

For a digital capture, your camcorder or VCR must be connected to your PC's 1394 port.

For an analog capture, connect the source video to the Composite or S-Video input of your capture hardware. Connect your source audio to the audio input of the capture hardware, if there is one; otherwise, connect the audio to the audio input of your PC's sound card.

2. Click the *Capture* button at the top of the screen if you are not already in Capture mode. The Capture mode interface is displayed (see page 19).
3. Click the desired capture setting on the Diskometer. If you need to make detailed adjustments, click the Diskometer's *Settings* button, which opens the *Capture format* options panel (page 250).

Keep in mind that DV capture uses much more disk space than does MPEG. If you are planning to output your finished movie to disc (VCD, S-VCD or DVD), you may choose to capture in MPEG rather than DV format.

For an analog capture, keep in mind that the higher the quality setting, the larger will be your captured video file.

See “Digital capture” (page 28) and “Analog capture” (page 30) for further explanation of these options.

4. Click the *Start capture* button on the Diskometer.

The Capture Video dialog box is displayed.

5. Type in a name for the video capture file you are about to create, or accept the default name. You can optionally also enter a limiting duration for the capture.
6. If you are capturing from an analog camcorder or VCR, start playback now. This step is unnecessary with a digital-source capture, as Studio will control the playback equipment automatically when needed.
7. Click the *Start capture* button in the Capture Video dialog box. The button caption changes to *Stop capture*.

Capture begins. The Player displays the incoming digitized video that is being saved to your hard drive (unless you have unchecked *Capture preview* on the *Capture source* options panel).

During capture, Studio performs *automatic scene detection* based on the current setting in the *Capture source* options panel.

8. Click the *Stop capture* button to end capture at a point you select.

Studio automatically stops capturing if your hard drive fills up or the maximum duration you entered is reached.

---

## Scene detection

---

Automatic scene detection is a key feature of Studio. As video capture proceeds, Studio detects natural breaks in the video and divides it up into *scenes*. A new icon is created in the Video Scenes section of the Album for each scene detected.

Depending on which capture device you are using, automatic scene detection is carried out either in real time during capture, or as a separate step immediately after capture is completed.

You can configure scene detection using the options under *Scene detection during video capture* on the *Capture source* options panel (*Setup* ➤ *Capture Source*). Not all scene detection options are available with every type of video source. Options that do not apply to your setup are disabled in the dialog.

The four possible options are:

- **Automatic based on shooting time and date:** This option is available only when you are capturing from a DV source. Studio monitors the time stamp data on the tape during capture, and starts a new scene whenever a discontinuity is found.
- **Automatic based on video content:** Studio detects changes in the video content, and creates a new scene wherever there is a large change in the images. This feature might not work well if the lighting is not stable. To take an extreme example, a video shot in a nightclub with a strobe light would produce a scene each time the strobe flashed.

- **Create new scene every X seconds:** Studio creates new scenes at an interval you choose. This can be useful for breaking up footage that contains long continuous shots.
- **No automatic scene detection:** Select this option if you want to monitor the entire capture process and decide for yourself where scene breaks should occur. Press the [Space] key each time you want to insert a scene break during capture.



## DIGITAL CAPTURE

This section covers aspects of capturing from a DV source deck (camcorder or VCR) and a 1394 port. To read about capturing from analog hardware, please see “Analog capture” on page 30.

You have two choices for the way the video data is encoded and compressed in full-quality captures. For most purposes, DV format is the logical choice, but if you are planning to output your finished movie to disc (VCD, S-VCD or DVD), you may prefer the MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 format instead.

Because of the intensive computation required for MPEG-2 encoding, older computers may not be fast enough to achieve a satisfactory MPEG-2 capture. The type of capture hardware you have and the capture quality you choose also help determine the minimum CPU speed needed. In cases where Studio is able to estimate that your computer is not fast enough to carry out a particular capture, it will advise you of the problem and give you a chance to cancel the operation.

## DV

DV is a high-resolution format with correspondingly high storage requirements.

Your camcorder compresses and stores video on the tape at 3.6 MB/s, at a quality equivalent to broadcast video. During capture, the video data is transferred directly from the camcorder tape to your PC hard drive with no changes or additional compression. Capturing DV video consumes a lot of drive space, so you may want to pick small segments to capture instead of the entire tape if space is an issue on your system.

You can calculate the amount of disk space you will need by multiplying the length of your video in seconds by 3.6, which gives the number of megabytes required. For example:

1 hour of video = 3600 seconds (60 x 60)

3600 seconds x 3.6 MB/s = 12,960 MB (12.7 GB)

Hence 1 hour of video uses 12.7 GB of storage.

To capture DV video, your hard drive must be capable of sustained reading and writing at 4 MB per second. All SCSI and most UDMA drives are capable of this. The first time you initiate a capture, Studio will test your drive to make sure it is fast enough.

## MPEG

DVD and S-VCD discs both use files in MPEG-2 format, an extension of the MPEG-1 format used for VCDs. MPEGs intended for use on the Internet will be at lower resolutions and in MPEG-1 format.

The *Capture format* options panel (*Setup* ➤ *Capture Format*) includes a variety of options to control the quality of MPEG captures. Refer to “Capture format settings” on page 250 for detailed information about MPEG quality options.

---

## Audio and video levels – digital

---

With digital captures, you are using audio and video that have been encoded digitally during recording, right in the camera. When you transfer the footage through a 1394 port to your computer, the data remains in the compressed digital format throughout, so you cannot adjust the audio or video levels during the capture. This is in contrast to analog captures, where the audio and video *can* be adjusted as capturing takes place.

With digital captures, you defer any needed adjustment of audio and video levels until Edit mode, where Studio provides plug-in video effects for adjusting the visual balance of a clip, and audio effects to enhance the sound. These effects allow you to adjust individual clips rather than having to make global adjustments affecting all the video in a capture file. For details see “Analog capture” (below), “Using video effects” (page 98), and “Audio effects” (page 223).



## ANALOG CAPTURE

The topics in this section relate to capture with analog equipment, such as:

- A camcorder or VCR with analog outputs connected to a DirectShow-compatible capture board or external device.
- A USB video camera or webcam.

If you are using a digital camcorder connected to your computer via a 1394 port, please refer instead to “DV capture” on page 28.

---

## Capture quality options

---

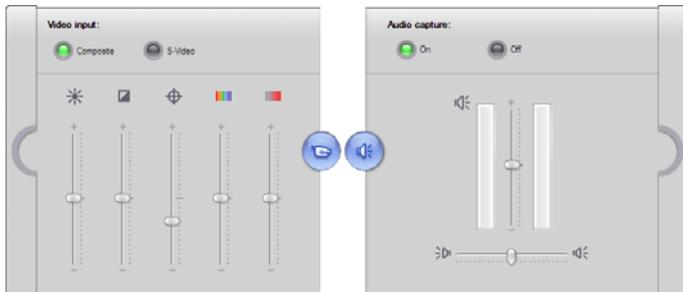
With most analog capture hardware, Studio offers three preset quality choices – *Good*, *Better* and *Best* – plus a *Custom* option. Your hardware’s capabilities determine how the presets translate into particular settings for picture size, frame rate, compression characteristics and quality. Keep in mind that the higher the quality, the more disk space is required. Choose the *Custom* preset to configure your own video capture settings. For more information on video capture settings, see *Appendix A: Setup Options* (page 250).

---

## Audio and video levels – analog

---

Studio provides fly-out panels for controlling video and audio levels during capture. This feature is especially useful when you need to compensate for differences in video captured from multiple sources.



*Video (L) and audio (R) panels for setting levels during analog capture.*

Although you can also adjust these levels with the appropriate *Video effects* in Edit mode, setting them correctly for capture can save you from having to worry about color correction later on.

Setting your audio options correctly as you capture will help in achieving consistent volume levels and quality.

Particular capture devices may offer fewer options than are shown and discussed here. For instance, with hardware that doesn't support audio captures in stereo, a balance control will not appear on the audio panel.

## Video

Choose the type of video you are going to digitize by clicking the appropriate *Source* button (*Composite* or *S-Video*). The five sliders allow you to control the brightness (video gain), contrast (black level), sharpness, hue and color saturation of the incoming video.

**Note:** The *Hue* slider does not appear when capturing from PAL equipment.

## Audio

Use the *Audio capture* buttons to control whether Studio should capture the audio along with the video. Select the *Off* button if your source is video only. The sliders on the tray let you control the input level and stereo balance of the incoming audio.



## IMPORTING VIDEO FROM DVD

Although it isn't capture in the strict sense, you can also bring video into Studio by importing it from a non-protected DVD disc or a DVD disc image on your hard drive. The *File* ➤ *Import DVD Titles* menu command opens a dialog that lets you locate and preview the DVD material of interest, then import it as an MPEG-2 file to the folder of your choice.

**Note:** If the audio on the DVD is in AC3 format, it may be necessary to purchase an activation code for the AC3 codec software.



### To import DVD video:

1. Select the DVD disc or image using the folder explorer controls under *Choose a disc or image*. Studio lists the “titles” (video files) available at the location under *Check the titles to import*.
2. Use the folder browser button  to select a destination folder for the imported files.

3. Enter a name for the DVD. This will be used as part of the imported file names. For example, if you name the DVD or image “My DVD”, and import Title 12, the resulting file name will be:

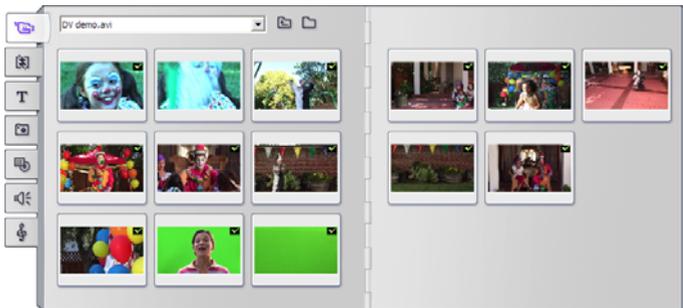
My DVD\_Title\_12.mpg

4. Select the title or titles you wish to import by checking the boxes next to the names. You can use the player controls on the right side of the dialog to preview the content of the currently-selected title.
5. Click the *Import* button.

Studio displays a progress bar to let you monitor the progress of the import operation. When it is complete, you can access the contents of the file for editing from the Album as with an ordinary capture file (see next chapter).

## CHAPTER 3:

# The Album



*The Video Scenes section of the Album. Click the tabs down the left side of the Album to access the materials in the other sections.*

The source materials you need for making a movie are stored in the various sections of the Album, each of which is accessed by its own tab as follows:

**Video Scenes:** This section contains your captured video footage. You can access and preview the capture files directly, or you can load one into the Album, where its scenes are represented by thumbnail icons. 

To use some of the scenes in your movie, just drag their icons into the Movie Window. See “The Video Scenes section”, page 38.

**Transitions:** This Album section contains fades, dissolves, slides, and other transition types, including the elaborate Hollywood FX transitions. To use a transition, position it next to or between video clips and graphics in the Movie Window. See “The Transitions section”, page 51.



**Titles:** This section contains editable titles, which you can use as overlays or as full-screen graphics. You can create your own titles from scratch, or use or adapt the supplied ones. Studio supports rolls, crawls, and many typographical effects. See “The Titles section”, page 53.



**Photos and Frame Grabs:** This is a section of photographs, bitmaps and grabbed video frames. You can use these images full-screen or as overlays on the main video. Most standard image file formats are supported. See “The Photos and Frame Grabs section”, page 54.



**Disc Menus:** Studio has an extensive collection of chapter menus to use in DVD, VCD and S-VCD authoring. You can use these as they are, modify them, or create your own. See “The Disc Menus section”, page 55.



**Sound Effects:** Studio comes ready with a wide range of high-quality sound effects. You can also use **wav**, **mp3** and **avi** files that you have recorded yourself or obtained from other sources. See “The Sound Effects section”, page 57.



**Music:** In this Album section you can locate and use music files stored on your hard drive. Files in **wav**, **mp3** and **avi** formats are supported. See “The Music section”, page 58.



## Using the Album

Each section of the Album contains as many pages as are necessary to hold the icons representing the items in that section. At the top right of each Album page, Studio shows the current page number and the total page count for the section. Click the arrows to move forward or back through the pages.



All types of Album content can be previewed simply by clicking on the icons.

This chapter introduces each of the Album sections in turn, beginning with a detailed discussion of the all-important Video Scenes section. Actually using the contents of the Album to create your edited movie will be the subject of chapters 4 through 11.

## Source folders for Album content

The scene icons in the Video Scenes section come from a captured video file, while the Transitions section is filled from resource files associated with the Studio program.

The icons in each of the other five Album sections are different: they represent the files contained in a particular disk folder. Each of these sections – Titles, Images, Disc Menus, Sound Effects and Music – has a default folder assigned to it, but you can select a different folder if desired.

The source folder for the section's content is listed at the top of the left Album page, next to a small *Folder* button . To change the source of the current section, either select a folder from the dropdown list, or click

the button, browse to another folder on your system, and select any file. The file you select will be highlighted in the repopulated Album section.



*The icons in the Titles section represent files stored in a selected source folder on your hard drive. The dropdown list at the top of the Album page lets you select either “Standard Titles” or “My Titles” from the installed “Titles” folder. The folder button beside the list lets you look elsewhere on your hard drive. The Disc Menus section works similarly.*

Some Album sections also provide a *Parent folder* button  to facilitate moving around within a group of folders containing appropriate media.



## THE VIDEO SCENES SECTION



This is where the editing process really begins – in the Video Scenes section of the Album with your captured raw footage. In a typical production, your first step will probably be to drag some scenes from the Album down into the Movie Window (see *Chapter 5: Video Clips*).

In the Album, scenes are displayed in the order in which they were captured. This order cannot be changed, since it is determined by the underlying capture file, but scenes can be added to your movie in any order you choose.

Similarly, while you can't trim (edit) Album scenes, you can use any desired portion of a scene when it appears as a clip in your movie.

## Interface features

The Video Scenes section offers several special interface features:

- Scenes that have been added to the Movie Window are distinguished in the Album by a green checkmark. The checkmark remains as long as any clip in the Movie Window originates with that scene.
- To see how a particular Album scene is used in your current project, use the *Album* ➤ *Find Scene in Project* menu command. Studio highlights any clips in the Movie Window that originate in the selected scene (or scenes). To go the other way, use the *Find Scene in Album* command, which is on the right-click menu for Movie Window clips.

Nearly all menu commands that apply to scenes are available both on the main *Album* menu, and on the pop-up menu that appears when you right-click a selected scene.

**Tip:** When this documentation calls for a menu command like *Album* ➤ *Combine Scenes*, remember that an equivalent command is usually available on the pop-up “context” menu as well.

## Summary of operations

Because of its central role, the Video Scenes section of the Album provides an extensive set of operations. These are covered below in the following topics:

- Opening a captured video file
- Viewing captured video
- Selecting scenes and files
- Displaying scene and file information
- Comment view
- Combining and subdividing scenes
- Redetecting scenes

---

### Opening a captured video file

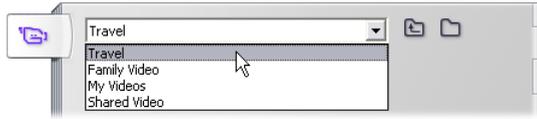
---

The default locations for your video files are the Windows default capture folder and the *My videos* folder. When you are viewing the *folder contents* page of the Video Scenes section, both of these locations always appear on the dropdown list at the top of the Album.

You can also choose other hard drive folders to access stored video files. Both the current and previous folders are also listed, if they are different from the two standard locations, making four different folders that may appear in the list at any one time.

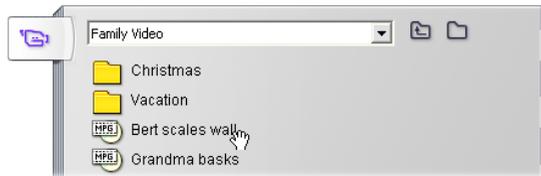
Under Windows XP, the system capture folder is located in the Windows' "all users" documents folder. The capture folder's real name is *My videos*, but Windows Explorer and Studio customarily call it by an

alias, *Shared videos*. This distinguishes it from *My videos* in the user's personal documents folder.



## Opening a folder

The *folder contents* page is displayed whenever you choose a new folder. It lists both the subfolders and the digital video files within the folder you chose:

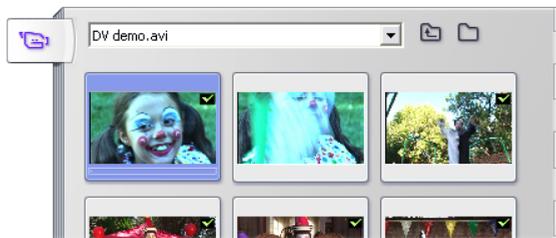


## Three ways to open a folder:

- Select the folder name on the dropdown list on the *folder contents* page.
- Select a folder listed on the *folder contents* page.
- Click the *parent folder* button .

## Opening a file

When you open a video file, the *file contents* page is displayed, showing icons that represent the scenes in the file:



### Three ways to open a digital video file:

- Select the file name on the dropdown list on the *file contents* page.
- Double-click a file listed on the *folder contents* page.
- Click the *browse for file* button  and use the Open dialog to locate a digital video file of any supported type on your hard drive.

### Scene detection and thumbnails

The Album now fills with the detected scenes from your captured video (see “Scene detection” on page 27). Each scene is denoted by a thumbnail frame – an icon of the scene’s first frame. It may be that the first frame doesn’t make a good icon for the scene, so Studio lets you pick a different one if desired.

### To change thumbnails in the Album:

1. Select the scene to be changed.
2. Use the Player to find the frame you want used for the thumbnail.
3. Click the *Album* ➤ *Set Thumbnail* menu command.

### Video aspect ratios

Most digital video files provide format information that allows Studio to detect the frame aspect ratio of 4:3 or 16:9 automatically. If the file does not provide aspect ratio information, Studio defaults to the standard 4:3 format.

The *Aspect Ratio 4:3* and *Aspect Ratio 16:9* commands on the *Album* menu let you manually set whichever ratio you need. These commands also appear on the right-button context menu for video in the Album.

Their method of operation is to stretch the original frames to the new frame size. If you set the ratio of a 4:3 movie to 16:9, for example, people and objects will appear widened relative to their height.

This is different from the frame-size conversion that occurs when you add a scene to a movie project with the “opposite” aspect ratio. In that case, the scene is scaled in both dimensions equally to fit within the target frame, and excess area appears as black.



(L) Original 4:3 frame; (C) Same frame with black sidebars on adding to 16:9 project; (R) Same frame after Aspect ratio 16:9 command is used.

**Note:** The movie project’s frame format, which cannot be changed after the project is created, can be set for new projects in the *Project preferences* options panel. See page 253 for more information.

---

## Viewing captured video

---

Individual or multiple scenes in the open captured video file can be viewed at any time.

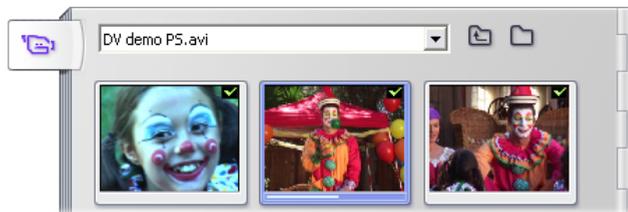
### To view captured video starting at a selected scene:

1. Click on the scene’s icon in the Album.  
The Player displays the first frame of the selected scene.

2. Click the *Play* button in the Player.

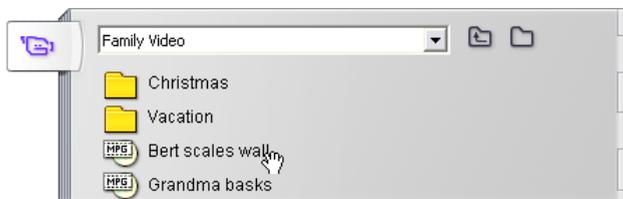
The Player now plays the selected scenes and any subsequent ones. Progress is indicated in three ways.

- The scenes highlight successively as they are played.
- The Player scrubber shows the current point of play relative to the entire movie.
- Scene thumbnails display a progress bar during preview. As you continue to view your captured video, the progress bar moves from one thumbnail to the next.



## Previewing digital video files

When a folder is open in the Album and the name of a digital video file is selected, you can use the Player to preview the video without actually opening the file into the Album.



---

## Selecting scenes and files

---

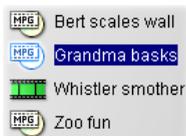
Studio offers a variety of ways to select scenes and other items in the Video Scenes section of the Album. Selected video scenes are indicated by a highlighted border. Selected folders and video files are shown with text highlighting.



*Selected scenes have a highlighted border (center).*

Selection techniques follow standard Windows conventions. Use any of the following, separately or in combination:

- Choose the *Edit* ➤ *Select All* menu command or press **Ctrl+A** to select all the scenes (or files and folders) currently displaying in the Album, including those on other pages.
- **Shift**-click to select a range of neighboring items.
- **Ctrl**-click to add or remove individual items from the selection.
- Starting with the mouse pointer over a blank area of the Album page, click and drag to “marquee” an area, selecting all the items that intersect the area.
- Use the arrow keys to navigate the Album grid. Use the arrows with **Shift** to select items as you go.



*Selected folders and video files have highlighted text.*

---

## Displaying scene and file information

---



As you move the mouse pointer over video scenes, the pointer changes to a grabber symbol. If you pause momentarily on the scene, the start time and length is displayed in a pop-up box. If you leave the grabber on the scene, the display persists for several seconds. The start time shown is the timecode from the original source video, in minutes, seconds, and frames.



For information regarding video files when the Video Scenes section is in *folder view* mode, select *Details view* in the Album's right button context menu. The file name, resolution, aspect ratio, duration and frame rate are displayed. Switch back to a more compact listing with *Icon view*.

---

## Comment view

---

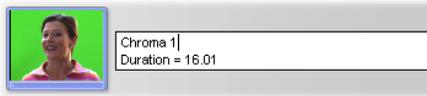
In the default view for the Video Scenes section, known as *Scene view*, each scene is represented by a thumbnail frame icon. To see more information about each scene, use the *Album* ➤ *Comment View* menu command.

In comment view, editable captions are displayed for Album scenes. The usage of these captions is up to you: they might be search keywords, or scene names, or text comments describing the scene content. The

default caption is generated from the scene's sequence number and duration (e.g. "Scene 3, 7:21").

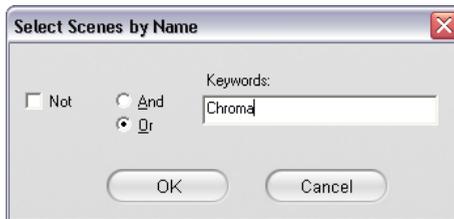


If you click on a video scene, an in-place text field appears, allowing you to enter the custom name or comment.



### Selecting scenes by name

A related option lets you select video scenes by scanning for keywords in the comments. Use *Album* ➤ *Select By Name* to open this dialog box:



Enter a keyword into the text field and click *OK* to highlight all *Album* scenes whose caption contains the keyword. The default captions are *not* searched – only the ones you have customized.



---

## Combining and subdividing scenes

---

After previewing your scenes, you might want to combine or subdivide some into larger or smaller units. Such adjustments are easily made.

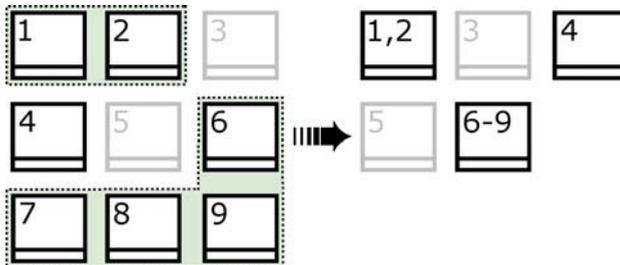
### To combine scenes in the Album:

1. Select the scenes to be combined.
2. Select *Album* ➤ *Combine Scenes*.

The selected scenes are combined into one.

Only selected adjacent scenes can be combined. Furthermore, they are joined in the order in which they appear in the Album, regardless of the order in which they were selected. (Album order proceeds across rows and then down the page.) To revert, press Ctrl+Z, or click the *undo* button.

If the scenes you selected were not all neighbors, each set of adjacent scenes is combined, but the different sets are *not* combined with each other.

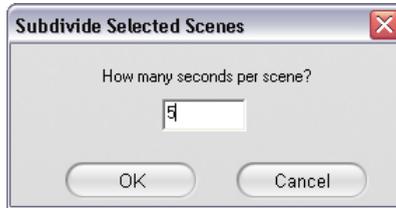


Several selected scenes (black) are merged into two longer scenes. Having no neighbors, scene 4 is unaffected, even though it was part of the selection.

## To subdivide scenes in the Album:

1. Select the scenes to be subdivided.
2. Select *Album* ➤ *Subdivide Scenes*.

The Subdivide Selected Scenes dialog box appears.



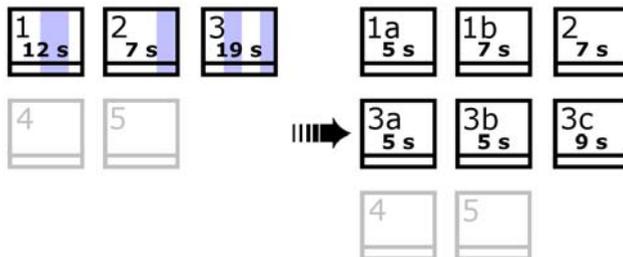
3. Choose the length of the subdivided scenes by typing in a value.

The smallest allowed subdivision is one second. Any video remaining after subdivision is added to the last scene.

4. Click *OK*.

A progress bar appears, the scene is subdivided, and new scenes are added to the Album. To revert, press Ctrl+Z, or click the *undo* button.

You can subdivide these scenes still further, if desired, down to the minimum duration of one second.



Three selected scenes are subdivided to a duration of five seconds. The vertical stripes indicate five-

second divisions within each scene. The uneven clip timings at right occur because time left after subdivision is added to the final divided scene; that is also why scene 2 is ultimately unaffected by the subdivision operation.

---

## Redetecting scenes

---

If you combine or subdivide scenes and later decide that you'd prefer to restore them to their original state, you may redetect any scene or selection of scenes. The detection results are identical to those obtained after capturing, provided the same scene detection technique is used.

If you have subdivided scenes, you must first recombine them. Even if you cannot exactly recall the initial state and so recombine more than is necessary, the detection process will restore the original scene sequence.

### **To redetect scenes:**

If you need to recombine any scenes, first select the subdivided scenes, then apply the *Album* ➤ *Combine Scenes* menu command.

1. Select the scenes you wish to redetect.
2. From the *Album* menu, select either *Detect Scenes by Video Content* or *Detect Scenes by Shooting Time and Date*.

A progress window appears as Studio detects the scenes and repopulates the Album.

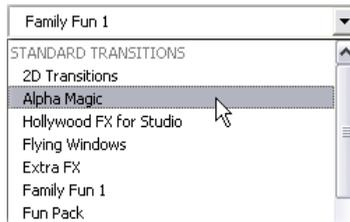


## THE TRANSITIONS SECTION



The Transitions section of the Album provides a large set of drag-and-drop clip transitions. To keep things manageable, the transitions are divided into groups. Use the dropdown list to select which group of transitions you want to view. All the transitions in the group are displayed, using as many Album pages as necessary.

To learn about transitions, and how you can use them in your movies, see *Chapter 7: Transitions*.

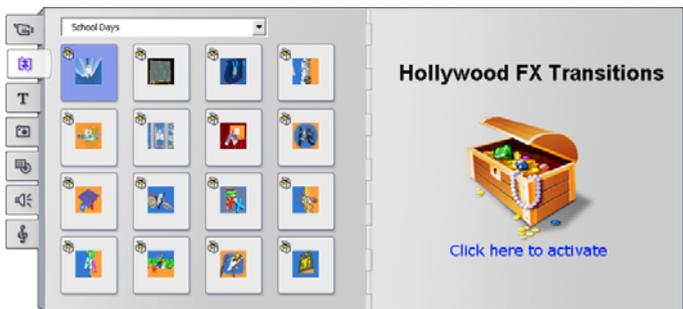


Studio's transitions collection includes 74 standard transitions, more than 50 Alpha Magic transitions, a starting set of unrestricted Hollywood FX 3-D transitions, and many more "locked" Hollywood FX transitions (with a treasure chest symbol in the top-left corner of the transition icon).

**Note:** If no premium transitions are visible, click *Editing environment* > *Show premium content* on the *Project preferences* options panel to reveal them (see page 253).

## Using the premium transitions

These demo transitions are freely available for you to try, but a Studio “watermark” will be superimposed on part of the video frame during playback. To make use of them in an actual production, simply open the Album to the desired transition, then click in the *activation* panel on the same Album page. You can purchase an *activation key* in just a few minutes, with no need to exit Studio.



*The Transitions section of the Album, open to a theme pack of Hollywood FX transitions. Click anywhere in the activation panel on the right-hand page to activate this set of transitions.*

For more information about purchasing premium content for Studio, see “Expanding Studio” on page 11.

## Displaying the transition name

As you move the mouse pointer over the transition icons in the Album, the pointer changes to a grabber symbol (indicating that the transition can be dragged from the Album to the Movie Window). If you pause momentarily on the icon, the name of the transition is displayed.



The display persists for several seconds or until your mouse pointer moves off the transition.

## Previewing transition effects

When you click on a transition icon, the Player demonstrates the transition using the convention that “A” represents the original clip and “B” the new clip. The demonstration cycles for as long as the icon remains selected.



To see a detailed view, stop the Player and use the jog buttons (*Frame reverse* and *Frame forward*) to step through the transition one frame at a time.



## THE TITLES SECTION

**T** This section of the Album contains a collection of text titles in a variety of styles. They can be used in your movie as either *full-screen* or *overlay* titles. The difference is that in an overlay title the transparent background is replaced by other material (usually a video clip), whereas in a full-screen title, the background is replaced with black.



In the Album, a gray checkerboard is used to indicate the portion of a title that will be treated as transparent in overlays. (If you prefer a black background, use the *Album > Black background* menu command.) As with video scenes, titles that have been added to your current project are indicated in the Album by a green checkmark symbol.

With Studio's powerful built-in Title Editor, you can readily create your own titles when needed. However, you may find it easier still to start with one of the supplied titles and customize it in the Title Editor.

**The Titles folder:** The icons in the Titles section represent files in the folder named at the top of each left-hand page in the section. Titles that you have created or modified can be added to the section by saving them into this folder from the Title Editor. You can also select a different folder to source the section (see "Source folders for Album content" on page 37).

For information on using titles in your movie, see *Chapter 8: Still images*.



## THE STILL IMAGES SECTION



This section of the Album displays thumbnail icons of image files, which may include grabbed video frames, photographs and bitmapped drawings. Most standard image file formats are supported. As with video scenes, images used by your current movie are indicated by a green checkmark.

**The Still Images folder:** The icons in the Still Images section represent files in the folder named at the top of each left-hand page in the section. Images can be added to the section by storing them in this folder. For instance, you can save grabbed video frames into the folder from the *Frame grabber* tool, or save a title from the Title Editor. You can also select a different folder to be the source of the section (see "Source folders for Album content" on page 37).

For information on using still images in your movie, see *Chapter 8: Still images*.



## THE DISC MENU SECTION



This section of the Album contains a collection of artist-designed menus for VCD, S-VCD and DVD authoring. Menus in Studio are really specialized titles: they can be created and edited in the Title Editor, and either saved from the editor into a disk folder or incorporated directly into your movie.

As with video scenes and other visual resources, disc menus that are in use in your movie are distinguished in the Album by a green checkmark symbol.

For information on using disc menus in your movie, see *Chapter 9: Disc menus*.

**The Disc Menus folder:** The icons in the Disc Menu section represent files in the folder named at the top of each left-hand page in the section. Menus can be added to the section by storing them in this folder. You can also select a different folder to be the source of the section (see “Source folders for Album content” on page 37).

**The *motion background* symbol:** Some of the menus supplied with Studio incorporate a background of moving video rather than a static picture, and you can also create such menus yourself. This “motion background” can help give a professional look to your finished disc.

**Availability:** The motion background feature is available in Studio Plus only. See “Adding a motion background” on page 196 for information on creating or editing a moving video background. See Adding a motion background for information on creating or editing a moving video background.

Menus with motion backgrounds are indicated by a small symbol  in the bottom right-hand corner of the Album icon.

Along with the many standard menus that come with Studio, and the motion menus that come additionally with Studio Plus, you will also find several folders of menus in the “Pinnacle Premium DVD Menus” series. These are “premium” menus (indicated by a treasure-chest symbol in the top-left corner of the menu icon). Many of these professional DVD menus include looping soundtracks.

**Note:** If no premium disc menus are visible, make sure you have checked *Editing environment* ➤ *Show premium content* on the *Project preferences* option panel (see page 253).

## Activating the premium menus

The demo menus are freely available for you to try, but a Studio “watermark” will be superimposed on part of the video frame whenever one is playing. If you want to use one in an actual production, simply open the Album to the desired menu, then click in the *activate* panel on the same Album page. You can purchase an *activation key* in just a few minutes, with no need to exit Studio.

For more information about purchasing premium content for Studio, see “Expanding Studio” on page 11.



## THE SOUND EFFECTS SECTION



Studio comes with a wide range of ready-to-use sound effects. These **wav** files are installed into a number of folders, covering categories such as “animals”, “bells” and “cartoons”.

**The Sound Effects folder:** This section of the Album displays the sound files contained in one disk folder, named at the top of each left-hand page in the section. You can display the sounds in a different folder – not necessarily one of those installed by Studio – by selecting that folder to be the source for the section (see “Source folders for Album content” on page 37).

Besides **wav** (Windows “wave”) files, files in **mp3** format and **avi** animation files are also displayed in this section of the Album, and may be drawn upon for supplemental audio in your productions.

Any sound clip can be previewed simply by clicking its name or icon.

For information on using sounds in your movie, see *Chapter 11: Sound effects and music*.

Along with the many unrestricted sound effects that come with Studio, you will also find several folders of effects in the UFX, or “Ultimate FX” series. These effects are premium effects (indicated by a treasure chest next to the sound effect name in the Album).

**Note:** If no premium sound effects are visible, click *Editing environment* > *Show premium content* on the *Project preferences* options panel (see page 253).

## Using the premium sound effects

These demo effects are freely available for you to try, but a Studio “watermark” will be superimposed on part of the video frame whenever the sound is playing, and an intermittent beep will be added to the soundtrack. To make use of the effects in an actual production, simply open the Album to the desired effect, then click in the *activation* panel on the same Album page. You can purchase an *activation key* in just a few minutes, with no need to exit Studio.

For more information about purchasing premium content for Studio, see “Expanding Studio” on page 11.



## THE MUSIC SECTION



This section of the Album displays the music files in a folder on your hard drive. To use a file drag it onto the Music track or another audio track on the Movie Window Timeline,

**The Music folder:** The **wav**, **mp3** and other audio files come from the folder named at the top of each left-hand page in the section. Other music files can be added to the section by storing them in this folder. You can also select a different folder to be the source of the section (see “Source folders for Album content” on page 37).

For information on using background music in your movie, see *Chapter 11: Sound effects and music*.

## CHAPTER 4:

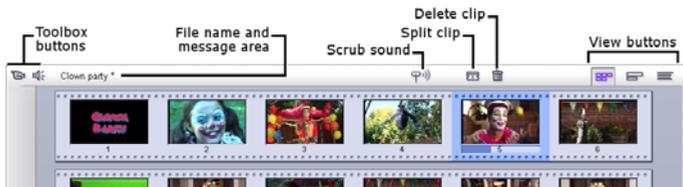
# The Movie Window

The Movie Window, where you build your movie from the raw materials in the Album, occupies the bottom half of the screen in Studio's Edit mode. To access the Movie Window, first switch to Edit mode if you are not already there:



The Movie Window title bar contains several important controls and displays. The toolbox buttons at the left of the title bar open the Video toolbox and the Audio toolbox, which are discussed on page 68.

To the right of the toolbox buttons is a text area where the project file name is displayed. Status and warning messages are also displayed in this area when required. Further still to the right are the *Audio scrubbing*, *Clip split* and *Clip delete* buttons, while at the far right are three *view selection* buttons (see “Movie Window views” on page 62).



## Audio scrubbing button

 By default, your project's audio is previewed during playback only. Studio's audio scrubbing feature, which is turned on and off by the loudspeaker button, provides audio preview when you are scrubbing through your movie as well.

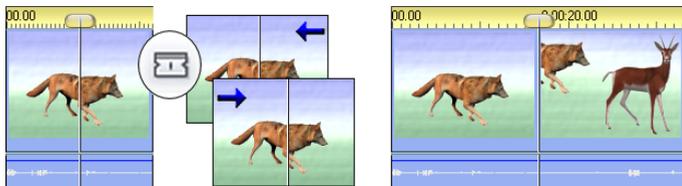
Audio scrubbing makes life much easier when making editing decisions that depend on sound cues.

## Split clip/scene button – the razorblade

 Click this button to split the currently-selected clip in the Movie Window, or the currently-selected scene in the Album.

No information is lost. If the item is an Album scene, it is split at the indicated point into two shorter scenes. If the item is a clip in the Movie Window, it is duplicated and automatically trimmed to the split point.

The razorblade button can be used in conjunction with the track-locking buttons in the Movie Window's Timeline view to carry out special operations like insert edits, and edits in which the audio leads or lags behind the video. See “Advanced Timeline editing”, page 90.



*Splitting a clip: The placement of the edit line in the original clip determines the split point. When you apply the razorblade tool, Studio duplicates the clip and trims away the portion after the split point in the first copy and up to the split point in the second.*

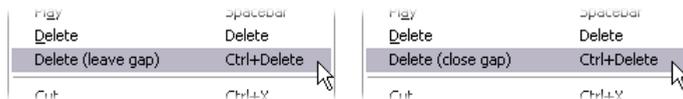
## Delete Clip button – the trashcan

 This button deletes the currently-selected content in any of the Movie Window views. By default, when video clips on the main *video* track of your project are deleted in any view, the gap in your movie that would otherwise be created by the deletion is automatically closed up, and clips on other tracks are removed or shortened as required to keep everything in sync.

If you delete clips on other tracks, the default behavior is that gaps between them are *not* automatically removed, so the timing of other clips is not affected.

If you press the Ctrl key while clicking the *delete* button, or pressing the Delete key, the default behavior for the current track is reversed. That is, on the main video track, Ctrl+Delete leaves a gap when the clip is removed, while on the other tracks, the gap on the track is closed up. In neither case are other tracks affected.

You can also access the delete operations through the right-button context menu for clips on the Timeline.



*The delete options on the right-button menu for Timeline clips are not the same for clips on the main video track (L) as for those on other tracks (R). The menus summarize the context-dependent keyboard shortcuts.*

## Positioning: edit line, scrubbers

The *current position* is the frame showing in the Player when you are working with a clip in the Movie Window. In the Timeline view, it is indicated by the edit line. The current position can be changed by moving either the Timeline scrubber (to which the edit line is attached) or the Player scrubber.



When the *Clip properties* tool is open, a third scrubber, the *trim scrubber*, is available for adjusting the current position within the clip during trimming.



## MOVIE WINDOW VIEWS

The Movie Window provides three different views of your project: *Timeline*, *Storyboard* and *Text*. Select the one you want to use by clicking the view selection buttons in the upper right corner of the Movie Window.

---

## Storyboard view

---

Storyboard view shows the order of video scenes and transitions. It uses thumbnail icons for quickly structuring a movie. You can choose to work with large or small thumbnails with the *Show large storyboard thumbnails* checkbox on the *Project preferences* options panel.



---

## Timeline view

---

Timeline view shows the positions and durations of clips relative to the Timescale. This view also displays up to eight *tracks* on which you can place various types of clip:



- **Video, plus full-screen disc menus, titles and graphics:** The *video* track contains the primary visual material in your production. See *Chapter 5: Video clips*, *Chapter 8: Still images* and *Chapter 9: Disc menus* for more information. 
- **Original (or “synchronous”) audio:** The *original audio* track contains the audio that was captured along with the video from your camera. You can manipulate the audio clips on this track to achieve various effects using insert-editing and split-editing techniques. See “Insert editing” (page 92) and “Split editing” (page 94) for more information. 

- **Overlay video and audio:** In Studio Plus, video and images placed on the *overlay* track can be used with the *Picture-in-picture* and *Chroma key* tools to give your video productions a professional appearance. These features are locked in other versions of Studio, producing “watermarked” output when used. You can upgrade to Studio Plus at any time if you need its advanced capabilities. Original audio for overlay video is stored on the linked audio track. See *Chapter 6: Two-track editing with Studio Plus* for details about the *overlay* track.
 
- **Title and graphic overlays:** Images placed on the *title* track will be rendered as overlays upon the main video, with transparent backgrounds. See *Chapter 8: Still images* and *Chapter 9: Disc menus* for more information.
 
- **Sound effects and voice-overs:** The audio clips on this track are mixed with the *original audio* track and the *background music* track to create the final soundtrack for your movie. See *Chapter 11: Sound effects and music* for full information.
 
- **Background music:** The background music for your movies can be created to any desired duration with the *SmartSound* tool (page 206) or imported with the *CD audio* tool (page 205). Your soundtrack can also make use of **mp3** and other music files (see page 201).
 
- **Disc menus, chapter marks and return-to-menu links:** This is an extra track that appears above the *video* track whenever the movie has at least one disc menu. See *Chapter 9: Disc menus* for information.
 



Because many editing operations can be carried out only in Timeline view, you should choose it whenever extensive, detailed or advanced editing is required.

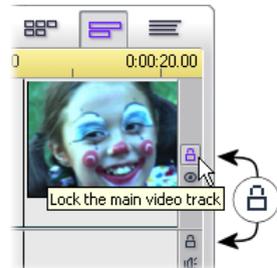
## Track locking

The *video* track normally takes precedence over all other tracks for trimming or deleting. This has several consequences:

- When you trim a video clip, clips running simultaneously on other tracks are also trimmed.
- When you delete a video clip, the time segment it used is also removed from any parallel clips.
- Clips that fall entirely within a deleted video clip's span are also deleted.

These behaviors can be bypassed when necessary with a feature that allows you to “lock” any track independently of the others, thereby excluding it from editing and playback operations.

The *padlock* buttons along the right edge of the Movie Window, can be clicked to toggle locking for the corresponding track. Track-locking gives Studio *insert-edit* and *split-edit* capability (see *Chapter 5: Video clips*).



## Track muting and hiding

The audio tracks can be individually muted with the *mute* buttons at the right edge of the Movie Window. These buttons have the same function as the mute buttons in the *Volume and balance* tool. (See page 218 for more information.)



The equivalent operation for video tracks is effected with the *hide* buttons, which can be used to temporarily omit a track's video from your project. This is especially handy to see what's really going on while editing overlay video in Studio Plus.



## Placement feedback

Studio gives you several types of feedback about your actions as you place clips in the Timeline view.

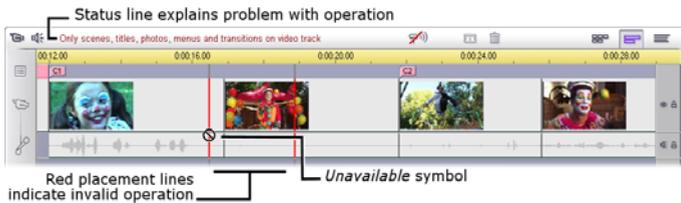
**The status line:** The status line area on the left of the Movie Window title bar displays messages as you place clips and perform other actions.

**Placement symbols:** While you are dragging a clip into position on the Timeline, Studio provides feedback to tell you whether the current placement of the clip is valid.

The mouse pointer shape and the colors of the vertical placement lines indicate what you can and cannot do.

For example, if you attempt to drag a sound onto the *video* track, the placement guidelines turn from green to red, the mouse pointer changes from “copy” to “unavailable”, and the status line tells you, “Only scenes, titles, photos, menus and transitions on video track.”

Green placement lines with the “copy” pointer  $\boxplus$  mean that an action is valid; red placement lines with the “unavailable” pointer  $\otimes$  show that it is not.



## Text view

The Movie Window Text view is a list showing the start and end times of clips, as well as their duration.



In addition, custom names for clips are visible in this view.





## THE TOOLBOXES

The toolboxes provide a convenient point-and-click interface for editing operations – adding clips to your movie, modifying existing clips and applying special effects. Studio provides separate toolboxes for video and for audio operations.

The toolboxes are available only in Edit mode. They are opened and closed with the buttons at the top left of the Movie Window.



Select the toolbox you want to open by moving your cursor over the icons. The individual buttons highlight, indicating which toolbox will open when you click. The Album is then replaced by the toolbox display, which contains two main areas:

- *Tool selector buttons* in a panel on the left. Clicking one of these opens the corresponding tool.
- The *currently-selected tool* on the right. Double-clicking a clip in the Movie Window also displays the corresponding tool (except for title clips, which are opened directly in the Title Editor when you double-click).

All the tool-selector buttons, except the top one in each set, open specialized tools. The top button in both toolboxes is the *Clip properties* tool. It displays a tool appropriate for trimming and otherwise editing the type of clip currently selected in the Movie Window.



## The Title Editor

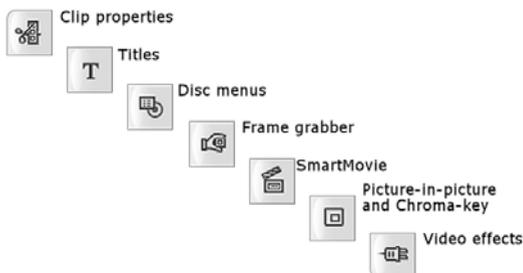
One powerful tool that is *not* directly accessed through the toolboxes is the Title Editor, in which you can combine text, images and other graphic resources to make titles and disc menus for your Studio productions. Access the Title Editor through the *Title* and *Disc menu* tools, or with the *Go to Title/Menu Editor* command from the right-button context menu in the Movie Window. See *Chapter 10: The Title Editor* for full information.

---

## The Video toolbox

---

The seven tools in this toolbox modify or create visual clip types, including video clips, titles, still images and disc menus.



**Clip properties:** The *Clip properties* tool  adjusts the start and end times of any type of clip. This is called “trimming”. The tool also allows you to type in a descriptive name for the clip. The tool also presents additional interface components appropriate to the type of clip being edited.

**Titles:** This tool lets you edit the name and length of titles. The *Edit Title* button provides access to the Title Editor window where you can change the text and appearance of the title. 

**Disc menus:** The *Disc menu* tool has a number of controls for editing the links between the buttons on a disc menu and entry points into your movie called *chapter marks*, which are represented on the *menu* track in the Movie Window. The *Edit Menu* button opens the Title Editor, where you can modify the visual appearance of a menu. 

**Frame grabber:** This tool takes a snapshot of a single frame from your movie or from your current video source. You can use it in your movie, or save it for use in other applications. As with Capture mode itself, this tool presents a different interface if your current capture source is DV than if you are using a non-DV source. 

**SmartMovie:** This tool automatically combines your source footage with a digital song file to create a music video in any of a variety of styles. 

**PIP and chroma key tool:** This tool provides an alternative, graphical interface to the Studio Plus *Picture-in-picture* and *Chroma key* effects. 

**Video effects:** Studio provides numerous plug-in video effects with this tool. Each video clip or still image in your project can use effects, whether alone or in combination. 

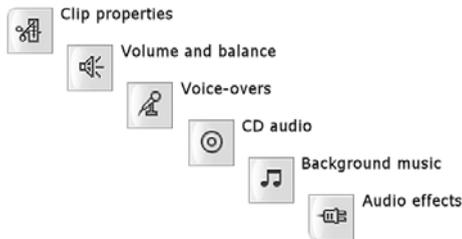
Along with its basic library of useful effects, Studio provides some “locked” premium effects that you can try out. For information about purchasing premium content for Studio, see “Expanding Studio” on page 11.

---

## The Audio toolbox

---

The six tools in this set operate on or create audio clips – “original” audio, voice-overs, sound effects and other audio files, CD tracks and SmartSound background music.



**Clip properties:** The *Clip properties* tool lets you adjust (“trim”) the start and end times of any type of clip. You can also enter a descriptive name for the clip to replace the default name if desired. (Clip names are displayed when the Movie Window is in Text view.) The tool’s other controls vary depending on the type of clip. 

**Volume and balance:** This tool gives you master volume controls for each of the three audio tracks: *original audio* (audio captured with video), *sound effects and voice-overs* and *background music*. It also enables you to mute any or all of the tracks, and to add real-time volume fades. Use the *balance and surround* control to position each track independently of the other two in a one-dimensional 

*stereo* or two-dimensional *surround-sound* space. When the *overlay* track is open, the tool provides a fourth set of controls, which affect the *overlay audio* track.

**Availability:** Surround sound and overlay video are supported in Studio Plus only.

**Record voice-overs:** To record a voice-over, simply click the *Record* button and begin speaking into your microphone.



**Add CD audio:** Use this tool to add tracks, in whole or in part, from an audio CD.



**Background music:** This tool lets you add background music using SmartSound, Studio's powerful music generator. Choose a style, song, and version. Studio will create a musical soundtrack that matches the duration of your movie.



**Audio effects:** This tool lets you apply plug-in effects to any audio clip. The popular VST standard for audio plug-ins is supported, enabling you to augment your library with add-on and third party effects. A configurable noise reduction filter is supplied as a standard effect. Effects available in Studio Plus also include both graphic and parametric EQ, reverb, chorus and others.



Some “watermarked” premium effects may also be included for you to try out, with others available through the Pinnacle web-site by clicking the *More effects...* “category” in the audio effects browser. For information about purchasing premium content for Studio, see “Expanding Studio” on page 11.

# Video clips

The cornerstone of most Studio video projects is the Album section containing your captured video scenes. To create your edited movie, you drag scenes from the Album into the Movie Window, where they are treated as editable *video clips*.

This chapter explains how to set the “in” and “out” (start and end) points for each clip. The Movie Window’s editing interface makes this “trimming” process simple, rapid and precise. The methods covered in this chapter for trimming video (“Trimming video clips”, page 81) can for the most part also be applied to the other types of clip (such as titles and sound effects) that are covered in later chapters.

A later section of the chapter covers more advanced editing techniques, including split edits and insert edits, that you can use to give your movies a more professional look. See “Advanced Timeline editing” on page 90.

We’ll look at using visual effects in Studio, and at some of the effects you can use in your movies – to correct a flaw, to communicate an idea, or just for fun. See “Video effects” on page 98.

And finally we’ll explore SmartMovie, Studio’s automatic movie generator. SmartMovie intelligently

combines a music soundtrack with your video footage to create a beat-synchronized music video, or with a series of still images to create a slideshow. Both modes support a variety of style options.



## VIDEO CLIP BASICS

The first step in creating a movie is to introduce some video scenes from the Album into the Movie Window, where they become editable *clips*. At some point you will probably also add some transitions, titles, audio and other extras, but a set of video scenes is the starting point for just about any project.

This section explains how to add scenes to your movie, and how to work with scenes from multiple capture files. It also covers some interface features that provide useful feedback as you work.

---

### Adding video clips to your movie

---

There are two ways to add a video clip to your movie:

**Drag and drop:** Drag a scene from the Video Scenes section of the Album and drop it into the Movie Window. This is normally the easiest and quickest way to put together a rough cut of your movie. You can drag multiple scenes simultaneously if you wish.

**The clipboard:** The standard clipboard operations (Cut, Copy and Paste) can be used with video clips in the Movie Window. The Copy operation works on Album scenes also.

When a scene or clip is pasted into the Movie Window, it is inserted at the first clip boundary starting at the edit line position. You can use the standard keyboard shortcuts for clipboard operations (Ctrl+X for cut, Ctrl+C for copy, Ctrl+V for paste), or select the desired operation from the right-button menu.

When the Movie Window is in Timeline view, you can drop a video scene or clip onto any of the following:

- The main *video* track. If the clip has associated audio, it is added to the *original audio* track. This video will serve as the background for any overlay video or titles on the lower Timeline tracks.
- The *overlay* track. Video on this track is superimposed on the contents of the *video* track. The picture-in-picture and chroma key effects are used to make a portion of the overlay frame transparent so that some of the main video can be seen. Except in Studio Plus, any clips on the *overlay* track are displayed with a “watermark” graphic. If you decide to use the *overlay* track in your movies, you can upgrade to Studio Plus at any time.
- The *title* track. In Studio Plus, if the *overlay* track is hidden, dropping a video clip on the *title* track causes the *overlay* track to open and the clip to be placed upon it. In other versions of Studio, or when the *overlay* track is already displayed, the *title* track does not accept video clips.
- The *sound effects* track or the *background music* track. Attempting to drop a video clip on either of these tracks actually drops the clip’s original audio.

---

## Working with multiple capture files

---

For some projects you may want to incorporate scenes from multiple source tapes, or from different capture files made from one tape. To achieve this, load in each of the files in turn and drag whichever scenes you want from each file into your movie.

### **To use multiple capture files:**

1. Drag scenes from the first capture file into the Movie Window.
2. Using the dropdown list or the *folder* button in the Video Scenes section of the Album, open the second capture file. Studio displays scenes from only the current file in the Album.

See “Opening a captured video file” on page 40 for detailed information on this step.

3. Drag scenes from the second captured file into the Movie Window. Continue in this manner until you have gone through all the files.

Because any given movie can be in only one of the standard (4:3) format and the widescreen (16:9) format, Studio does not let you mix frame formats in the Movie Window.

By default, the first video clip you add to a movie determines the movie’s frame format, and later clips are modified as necessary to conform to it. See “The project video format” below for further information.

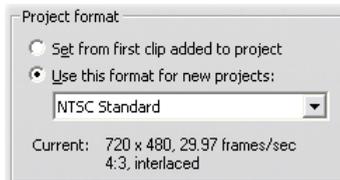
---

## The project video format

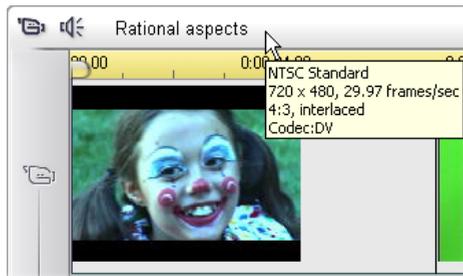
---

The video scenes you add to a project need not all originate with the same device or be in the same file format. They need not even have the same frame size, aspect ratio or frame rate.

When video is played back within Studio, however, a common frame format must be used. The *Project format* box on the *Project preferences* options panel lets you specify the format for new projects either explicitly (e.g. “NTSC Widescreen”) or implicitly, from the format of the first clip you add to the project.



The current project format is displayed as a tooltip over the project title in the Move Window.



The project format applies to all video and image clips in the Movie Window, and to the preview of those clips in the Player. Visual content in the Album, such as your captured video scenes, is shown by default in its original format, whether or not that matches the project format.

If you want to avoid black bars (“letterboxing”) in your project video, but still want to use scenes shot in the wrong aspect ratio, here are two other approaches:

- Use the *Aspect ratio* commands on the *Album* menu. These let you stretch the Album scenes to conform to the proportions of the project frame, at the cost of some distortion. Please see “Video aspect ratios” on page 42 for more information.
- Use the *2D Editor* effect with keyframing to create a “pan and scan” version your video. Studios often use this technique to make their movies fit a standard television screen when they are transferred to videotape or DVD. There is no distortion with this method, but some material is lost from each frame. Careful tracking of the action with the aid of keyframing generally allows you to obtain acceptable results despite this problem.

**Availability note:** The *2D Editor* effect and the keyframing feature are provided in Studio Plus only.



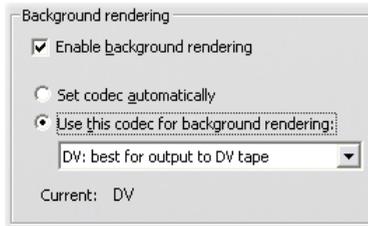
*Compensating for source video in the “wrong” aspect ratio by adding black bars (L), stretching to the full frame (C), and pan-and-scan (R). Each method has its own drawbacks.*

## Background rendering

The project format is also used as the target format for *rendering*, which is the process of generating video for footage in which HFX transitions, effects or other

computationally demanding features are used. Until such video has been rendered, it may not display smoothly and with full detail during preview.

Studio is able to carry out rendering behind the scenes while you work. This feature is controlled from the *Background rendering* box on the *Video and audio preferences* options panel.



Following the dialog's advice regarding the codec to use for background rendering may help reduce the rendering time when your final movie is output.

If you are planning to preview your video on an external device (Studio Plus only), you may need to set the project format and the background rendering codec to match that device. For instance, if you are previewing on an analog monitor plugged into your DV camcorder, you should do your background rendering in DV.

---

## Interface features

---

Studio provides a variety of visual cues regarding the video clips in the Movie Window:

- When a clip is added to the Movie Window, a green checkmark appears on the Album's icon for the

corresponding scene. The checkmark remains as long as any clip in the Movie Window belongs to that scene.

- To see the original location of a clip in your source video, use the *Find Scene in Album* command on the right-click menu for Movie Window clips. Studio highlights the Album scene from which the selected clip is drawn. To go the other way, use *Album* ➤ *Find Scene in Project* to show how a particular Album scene is used in your current project.
- When neighboring scenes from the Album are placed in sequence in the Movie Window, the border between the clips is displayed as a dotted line. This is to help you keep track of your clips, and does not affect how they can be manipulated in the Movie Window.
- In Timeline mode, any special effects you have applied to a clip are indicated by small icons along the bottom of the clip. These correspond to the effect groups shown on the *Video effects* tool browser. You can open the tool for parameter editing by double-clicking any of the icons.



*The star icon below this video clip shows that at least one effect in the “Fun” category has been applied.*



## TRIMMING VIDEO CLIPS

In general, captured video scenes contain more material than you actually require for your movie. “Trimming” – the process of adjusting the *in* and *out* points of a clip to remove unwanted footage – is a fundamental editing operation.

No data is lost by trimming: Studio sets new start and end points for the clip in the Movie Window, but the source of the clip – the original Album scene – remains intact. This means you can always reset clips to their original state, or select different trim points.

Studio offers two ways to trim any clip (video scenes, transitions, titles, still images, audio clips and disc menus):

- Directly on the Timeline (see “Trimming on the Timeline using handles” below).
- Using the *Clip properties* tool (see “Trimming with the *Clip properties* tool” on page 86).

A video clip can be trimmed to any desired *in* and *out* points within the limits of the original scene.

---

### Trimming on the Timeline using handles

---

The quickest way to trim is by dragging the edges of clips directly on the Timeline. Watch the Player as you trim, so you can find the frame on which you want to begin or end.

Let's first consider the simplest trimming case, in a movie with only one clip. Then we'll turn to the more usual situation of trimming a single clip that is surrounded by other clips.

### **To trim a single clip on the Timeline:**

1. Delete all but one clip from the Timeline. If the Timeline is empty, drag a scene in from the Album.
2. Expand the Timescale to make fine adjustments easier.

Position the mouse pointer anywhere on the Timeline except directly over the edit line. The pointer becomes a clock symbol. Click-drag it to the right to expand the Timescale.

This illustration shows maximum expansion, where each tick mark represents a single frame:



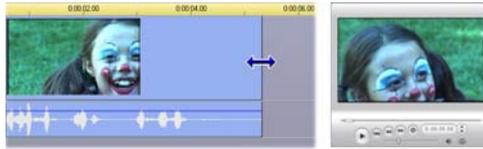
3. Position your mouse pointer over the right edge of the clip. The pointer becomes a left-pointing arrow.



4. Click-drag to the left while keeping an eye on the Player, which updates continuously to show the last frame in the trimmed clip.

As you shorten the clip, the arrow cursor becomes two-directional, indicating that the clip edge can be dragged both left and right. You can reduce the clip

to as little as a single frame, or increase it up to the end of the source scene.



5. Release the mouse button. The clip is now trimmed.

## Multiple clips

The secret to trimming a clip when multiple clips are on the Timeline is that you must first select the clip to be trimmed by clicking on it with the mouse.

### To trim with multiple clips on the Timeline:

1. Set up the Timeline with two short clips.
2. Adjust the Timescale until the clip you want to adjust is a convenient size for editing.
3. Click the second clip. The *video* track should now look something like this:



You can trim the right-hand edge of the clip just as in the single-clip example above. As you do so, the last frame of the clip is displayed in the Player. As long as the second clip remains selected, you can continue to trim more video by dragging the edge to the left, or restore some of the trimmed video by dragging the edge to the right.

4. With the second clip still selected, move your mouse pointer over the left edge of clip until the pointer changes to a right arrow.



5. Drag the left edge of the second scene to the right.



As you drag, the first frame of the clip is displayed in the Player. As long as the clip remains selected, you can continue to trim more video by dragging the edge to the right, or restore some of the trimmed video by dragging the edge to the left.

6. Release the mouse button. The clip you trimmed snaps back against the right edge of the first clip.



## Gaps and fills: Trimming with the Ctrl key

As we have seen in the example above, when you shorten a clip on the *video* track, the clip and any clips to the right of it move leftwards as necessary so that no gap is left. At the same time, clips on other tracks are shortened to keep the whole Timeline in sync. When you trim a clip on any *other* track, however, gaps are not automatically closed up, and no other track is affected.

This default trimming behavior simplifies editing under most circumstances, but Studio also gives you a way to invert the behavior when needed. If you press the Ctrl key before you begin trimming a clip on the *video* track, neither that clip nor any other will be repositioned, and gaps are not closed up. There is no effect on other tracks.

Meanwhile, using Ctrl when trimming clips on other tracks again inverts the normal behavior. The clips on the track will close in to fill any gap left by the trim. Clips on tracks besides the one being trimmed are again unaffected.

**Note:** See page 61 for a description of the parallel behavior of Ctrl when deleting clips.

---

## Clip-trimming tips

---

If you are having difficulty manipulating the edges of clips during trimming, try the following:

- Verify that the clip you wish to trim is selected, and that it is the *only* one selected.
- Expand the Timescale until it is easier to make fine adjustments.
- Avoid expanding the Timescale *too* far, which makes clips appear very long. If that happens, undo until the scale is the way you want it; or reduce the scale by dragging it towards the left; or select an appropriate value from the Timescale's context menu.

---

## Trimming with the *Clip properties* tool

---



Although it is possible to trim video clips directly on the Timeline with full frame accuracy, rapid, precise trimming is often easier to achieve with the *Clip properties* tool. To access this tool, select the clip you want to change, then use the *Toolbox* ➤ *Modify Clip Properties* menu command, or click one of the toolbox buttons at the top left of the Movie Window. (Clicking the same button a second time will close the tool.)

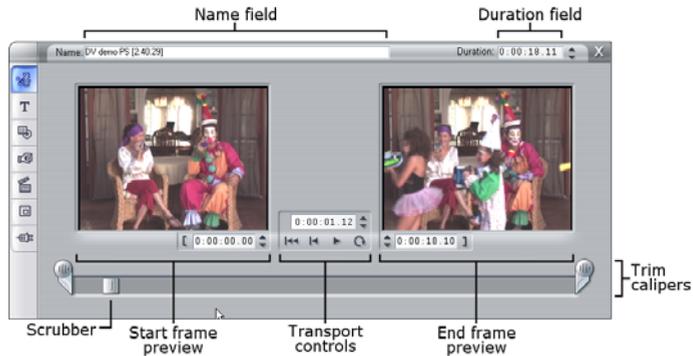
In the case of video clips – in fact, *any* clips other than titles – you can also open and close the *Clip properties* tool by double-clicking the clip in any Movie Window view.

The *Clip properties* tool can be used to modify any kind of clip. It offers an appropriate set of controls for each type.

**The *Name* text field:** For a video clip, most of the clip property controls are for trimming. The only exception is the *Name* text field, which lets you assign a custom name to the clip to replace the default one assigned by Studio.

The *Name* field is provided on the *Clip properties* tool for all clip types. Clip names are used by the Movie Window's Text view, and can also be viewed as fly-by labels when your mouse moves over clips in the Storyboard view.

**Preview areas:** Separate preview areas show the *in* and *out* frames of the trimmed clip, together with a counter and jog buttons. The layout of each preview area is similar to that of the Player during normal editing.



**Setting playback position:** A scrubber control across the bottom of the tool lets you set the playback position anywhere within the clip. You can also set the playback position using the counter and jog buttons located between the two preview areas.

**Using the counters:** The positions reported by all three counters are relative to the beginning of the clip, which is position 0:00:00.0. As with the counter on the Player, you can adjust the counters in the *Clip properties* tool by clicking in one of the four fields (hours, minutes, seconds, frames) to select it, then using the jog buttons. When none of the fields is explicitly selected, the jog buttons apply to the frames field.

**Transport controls:** While the *Clip properties* tool is in use, the transport controls in the center area substitute for those that normally appear on the Player. These special transport controls include a *Loop play/Pause* button  that can be used to cycle repeatedly through the trimmed portion of the clip while the trim points are being adjusted.

**Setting the trim points:** The *left bracket*  button beside the counter in the left preview area, and the *right bracket*  button beside the counter in the right

preview area, set their respective trim points to the current position.

You can also adjust either trim point by:

- Entering a value directly into its counter
- Adjusting a counter field with the jog buttons
- Dragging the corresponding trim caliper

**The *Duration* text field:** This field shows the length of the trimmed clip in hours, minutes, seconds and frames. If you modify the value, either by editing the numbers directly or by clicking the associated jog buttons, the effect is to change the *out* point of the clip. Of course, you cannot reduce the duration to less than a frame, or increase it beyond the limits of the original video scene.

**Usage tip:** If you want to switch from trimming one clip on the *video* track to trimming another, just click on the new clip while the *Clip properties* tool remains open, or drag the Timeline scrubber to the new clip.

---

## Resetting trimmed clips

---

If you change your mind about a particular trim operation (or group of operations) after previewing, either use the *Undo* button (or Ctrl+Z) or manually reset the trimmed clip using one of these methods:

- Drag the clip's right edge directly on the Timeline until it stretches no further,
- In the *Clip properties* tool, drag the trim calipers to the ends of the clip.



## SPLITTING AND COMBINING CLIPS

If you want to insert one clip on the *video* track into the middle of another clip, split the latter into two parts then insert the new item. “Splitting” a clip actually results in it being duplicated. Both clips are then automatically trimmed so that the first ends at the split point and the second begins there.

### To split a clip in Timeline view:

1. Choose the split point.

You may use any method that adjusts the current position, such as moving the Timeline scrubber, clicking *Play* and then *Pause*, or editing the counter value in the Player.

2. Either right-click within the clip you wish to split and select *Split Clip* from the pop-up menu; *or*, make certain the edit line is positioned where you wish to split the clip, and click the *Split clip/scene* (razorblade) button (see page 60).

The clip is split at the current position.

### To restore a split clip:

- Use the *Undo* button (or press Ctrl+Z). Even if you have performed other actions since you split the clip, the multilevel undo allows you to step back as far as needed. Or,
- If undoing is not desirable because of intervening actions that you don’t want to discard, you can

replace both halves of the split clip with the original from the Album. Or,

- Delete one half of the split clip, and trim out the other.

### **To combine clips in the Movie Window:**

Select the clips you wish to combine, then right-click and choose *Combine Clips*.

The operation is allowed only if the combination of clips will also be a valid clip – that is, a continuous excerpt of the source video. On the Timeline, clips that can be combined meet along a dotted edge.



## **ADVANCED TIMELINE EDITING**

**Note:** The additional advanced features of Studio Plus, making use of the *overlay* track, are covered in *Chapter 6: Two-track editing with Studio Plus*.

During most editing operations, Studio automatically keeps the clips on the various Timeline tracks synchronized. For instance, when you insert a scene from the Album onto the *video* track, the relative positions of all clips to the right of the insertion remain unchanged.

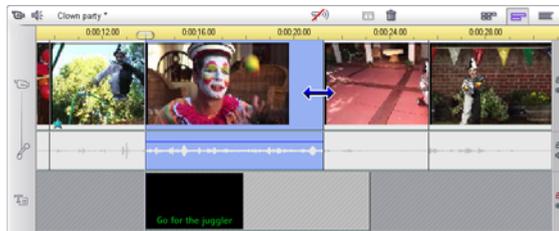
Sometimes, though, you might like to override the default synchronization. You might want to insert a new video clip into your project without displacing any clips of other types. Or you might want to edit video

separately from its accompanying original audio – a technique with several variations, discussed below.

Such special edits are possible using the track lock buttons along the right edge of the Movie Window in Timeline view. Each of the standard tracks (all except the *menu* track) provides a lock button. See “Track locking” on page 65 for more on track locking.

A locked track is grayed out in the Timeline view, indicating that the clips on the locked track cannot be selected or edited in any of the three views; nor are they affected by editing operations on unlocked tracks.

Apart from the *menu* track, any combination of tracks can be locked.



Locking the *title* track, for example prevents the duration of a title from being changed even when you trim clips on the main *video* track at the same time index.



When the *title* track is unlocked, trimming the main video clip above it automatically trims the title.

---

## Insert editing

---

In ordinary Timeline editing, a video clip and the original audio that was captured with it are treated as a unit. Their special relationship is symbolized in the Movie Window by the line connecting the *video* track indicator with the *original audio* track indicator, showing that the latter is dependent on the former.

The track lock buttons make it possible to deal with the two tracks independently for operations like *insert editing*, which typically means replacing part of a clip on the *video* track while the *original audio* track continues uninterrupted.

**Note:** Under Studio Plus, insert editing may also be carried out on the *overlay* video and audio tracks, using analogous methods to those described here.

For instance, in a sequence that shows someone recounting a story, you might wish to insert a shot of an audience member smiling (or sleeping!) without breaking away from the main audio.

### To perform an insert edit on the *video* track:

1. In the Timeline view of the Movie Window, click the *original audio* track's padlock button to lock the track.



The lock button is highlighted in red, and the track itself is grayed to show that its contents will not be affected by editing operations.

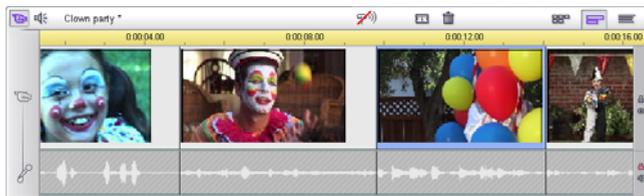
2. Clear space on the *video* track for the video clip you want to insert. Position the Timeline scrubber at the

point you want the insertion to start and use the *Split clip/scene* button. Now move to the point where the insertion should end and again split the clip. Finally, delete the portion of video that will be replaced by the insertion.

Because the audio track is still intact, having been locked, the video to the right of the insertion point does not move leftwards to fill the gap you have made in the Timeline, for the video and audio would then no longer be synchronized. If you were to preview your video now, you would see a black screen as the gap portion played back, but the soundtrack would be normal.



3. Now all that remains is to place the clip you want to insert. Drag the clip (whether from the Album or elsewhere on the Timeline) into the hole in the *video* track that you've just opened up.



If the inserted clip is too long for the space you created it is automatically trimmed to fit the space. You can adjust the trimming with the *Clip properties* tool.

## Insert editing on the *original audio* track

The converse insert-editing operation, in which a sound clip is inserted into the *original audio* track over unbroken video, is needed less often but is also readily performed in Studio.

The procedure is analogous to the one for inserting video: simply reverse the roles of the two tracks at every step.

---

## Split editing

---

In “split editing”, a clip’s audio and video are separately trimmed so that the transition to one occurs before the transition to the other.

**Note:** Under Studio Plus, split editing may also be carried out on the *overlay* video and audio tracks, using analogous methods to those described here.

In an “L-cut”, the video precedes its sync audio; in a “J-cut”, the audio comes first.

**Tip:** For faster, more precise trimming, you may find it helpful to have the *Clip properties* tool open when following the procedures in this section. To open the tool, just double-click one of the video clips before you begin.

## The L-cut

In an L-cut, the cut to new video comes before the cut in the audio.

Imagine a videotaped lecture in which the video periodically cuts away from the speaker to show travel or nature scenes illustrating the lecture topic.



*Audio and video cut simultaneously.*

Instead of cutting the audio and the video simultaneously, you might decide to let the speaker's voice overlap into the following scene. This makes it clear to the audience that the new scene they are now watching illustrates whatever explanation the speaker has been providing.

Notice that the video and audio clip boundaries in the completed cut form an L-shape.

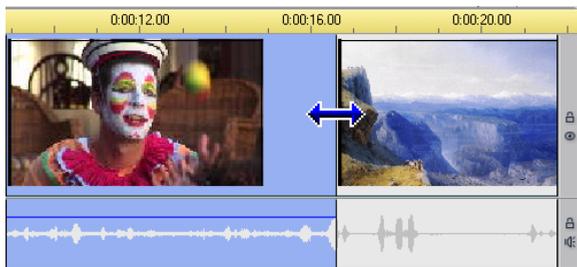


*Audio cuts after video. The resulting “L” shape is outlined in this illustration.*

There are many effective uses of this technique. It can be considered whenever the second clip's video serves to illustrate the first clip's audio.

### To perform an L-cut:

1. Adjust the Timeline so you can easily count off the number of frames or seconds you want to overlap.
2. Select the left-hand clip and trim its right edge to the point where you want the audio to end.



3. Lock the audio track. Now drag the right-hand edge of the same clip's video leftward to the point where the following clip's video should start.



4. With the audio track still locked, drag the second clip's video to the left until it meets the original clip.

If there isn't enough excess video at the start of the second clip to make this trim possible, you will first need to trim off a sufficient amount from both its video *and* audio then try again.



5. Unlock the audio track.

The video now cuts away to the second clip ahead of the audio. Video has been trimmed from the end of the first clip, and audio has been trimmed from the start of the second clip.

## The J-cut

In the J-cut, the new audio cuts in *before* the video switches. This can be effective when the second clip’s audio prepares the viewer for the material in the scene.

Returning to the videotaped lecture example, let’s say we are now going to switch back to the speaker at the end of the interpolated footage. If we let the next part of the lecture appear on the soundtrack a few moments before the video shows us the podium again, the change will be much less abrupt.

This time the clip boundaries outline the letter J:



*Audio cuts before video. The resulting “J” shape is outlined in this illustration.*

### To perform a J-cut:

1. Adjust the Timeline so you can easily count off the number of frames or seconds you want to overlap.
2. As before, trim back the right edge of the left-hand clip, both video and audio, by the overlap interval.
3. Lock the audio track. Now drag the right-hand edge of the same clip's video back to the right by the overlap interval.
4. Unlock the audio track.

The audio now cuts away to the second clip ahead of the video.

**Note:** The procedures described above for performing the L-cut and the J-cut are not the only possibilities. With the J-cut, for example, another method would be to trim the right-hand clip to the desired start point of the video then, with the video track locked, drag the audio portion leftwards to overlap the audio of the left-hand clip.



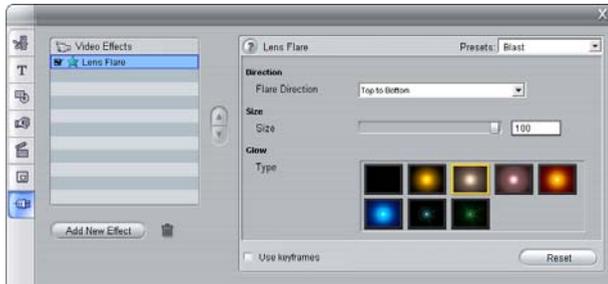
## USING VIDEO EFFECTS

Most video editing consists of selecting, ordering and trimming video clips, of connecting clips with transition effects and combining them with other materials such as music and still images.

Sometimes, though, you also need to modify the video images themselves, manipulating them in some way to achieve some desired effect. Studio's *Video effects* tool provides an extensive set of plug-in video effects that

can be applied either to video or still images. See page 109 for descriptions of the basic set of effects supplied with Studio.

The *Video effects* tool is the seventh tool in the Video toolbox. It has two main areas: at the left, an *effects list* showing which effects are already attached to the currently-selected clip(s), and at the right, a *parameters panel* where you can tune the effect as required.



## Video effects vs. audio effects

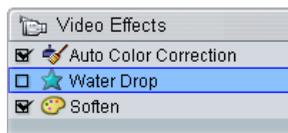
In most respects, the *Video effects* tool and the *Audio effects* tool work identically, except for the type of material they apply to.

---

## Working with the effects list

---

Each video or image clip in your project can be modified by one or more video effects. Each effect is applied to the original image in turn, in the order in which they are listed on the *Video effects* tool.



The checkboxes next to each effect name allow you to enable and disable effects individually without having to remove them from the list (which would cause any customized parameter settings to be lost). In the above illustration, the “Speed” effect has been disabled while the other two effects on the list remain in force.

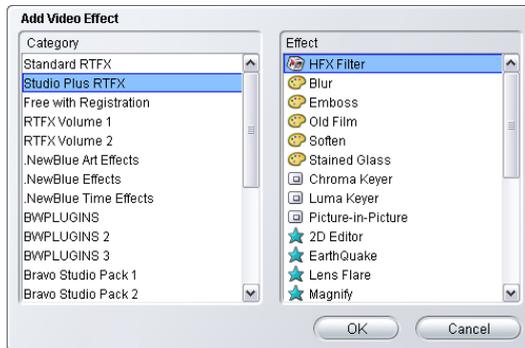
## Adding and deleting effects

**To add an effect** to the list for the current clip, click the *Add new effect* button, which opens an *effects browser* on the right-hand side of the tool window.



Click an item in the browser’s *Category* list to display the names of the individual effects in that category. Select the effect you want, then click the *OK* button to add the effect.

**To remove the currently-selected effect** from the list, click the *delete effect* (trashcan) button.



*The Video Effects browser is open here to the Studio Plus RTFX page, which contains an additional set of effects for Studio Plus. Other packs contain other premium effects for separate purchase. The last ‘category’, More Effects, opens a page on Pinnacle’s web-site where more premium effects are available.*

Premium video and audio effects, like other locked content in Studio, can be used freely, but cause a “watermark” graphic to be added to the video when played back. If you want to use the effect in an actual production, you can purchase an *activation key* without leaving Studio. For information about purchasing locked video and audio effects, and other premium content for Studio, see “Expanding Studio” on page 11.

## Changing the order of effects

The cumulative result of using more than one effect on the same clip can vary depending on the order in which the effects are applied. With the up and down arrow buttons to the right of the effects list, you can control the position of each effect in the processing chain. The buttons apply to the currently-selected effect.

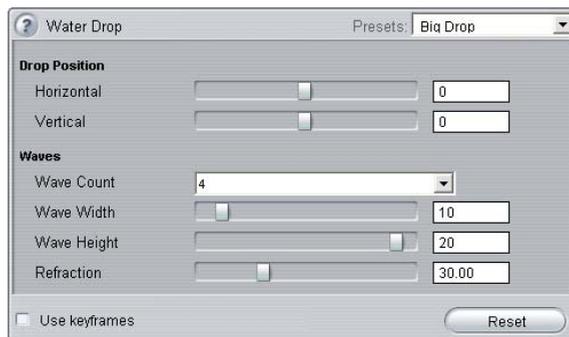


---

## Changing effect parameters

---

When an effect is selected in the effects list, the parameters panel on the right-hand side of the *Video effects* tool window provides controls for adjusting the effect’s parameters, if any.



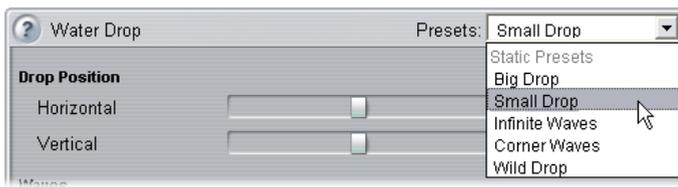
The controls for the basic library of effects supplied with Studio are described below (beginning on page 111). Add-on effects are described in their own on-line documentation, which you can access from the parameters panel by pressing function key **F1** or clicking the *help* button  at the top left of the parameters panel.

**Note:** Some plug-in effects may provide their own parameter windows with specialized controls. In those cases, the parameters panel on the effects tool displays a single *Edit* button, which accesses the external editor.

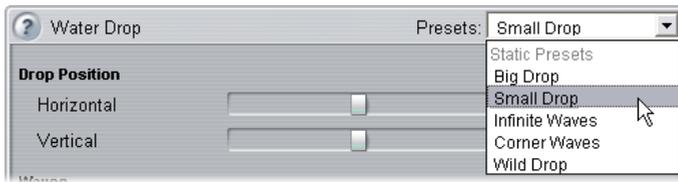
## Using parameter presets

In order to simplify the use of parameters, many effects offer *presets* that let you configure an effect for a particular use simply by selecting a name from a list.

In Studio Plus, there are two kinds of preset: *static*, which store a single set of effect parameters, and *keyframed*, which store multiple sets of parameters in the form of keyframes (see below).



In versions of Studio that do not support keyframing only static presets are available.



Often, the quickest way to configure an effect is to start with the preset that comes closest to what you want, then fine-tune the parameters by hand.

**Resetting effects:** A special type of preset is the factory default setting of each effect. The default can be restored at any time by clicking the *Reset* button at the bottom of the parameters panel.



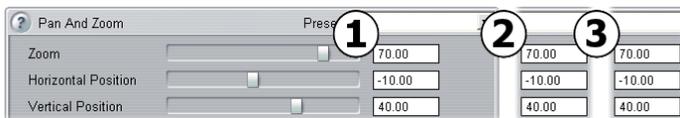
If *Reset* is clicked when keyframing is in use, the default parameter values are assigned only to the keyframe at the current movie position. That keyframe is created if it did not already exist.

---

## Keyframing

---

The parameters for Studio video effects are ordinarily applied at the first frame of the video clip and continue unchanged to its end. This is the standard behavior for each effect you add to the clip.

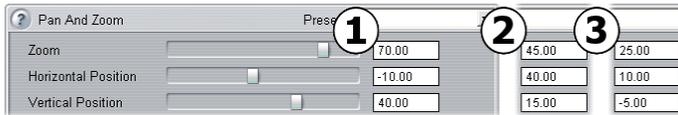


*Ordinarily, an effect's parameter values do not vary throughout the video clip the effect belongs to.*

Keyframing – the ability to change parameter values smoothly *within* a video clip – opens a wide range of new possibilities for using effects in your movies.

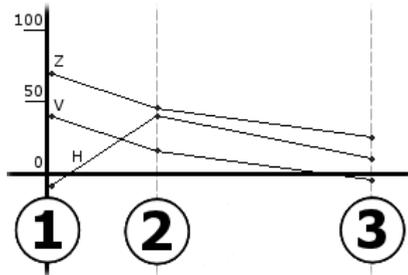
**Availability note:** The keyframing feature described here is provided in Studio Plus only.

Each keyframe stores a full set of parameter values for the effect, and specifies at which frame within the clip those values should be fully applied.



*With keyframing, new sets of parameter values can be applied as often as desired throughout the clip.*

Between keyframes, numeric parameter values are automatically adjusted from frame to frame to connect the keyframe values smoothly.

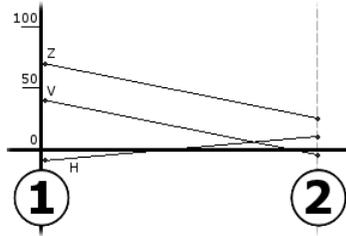


*A graphical view of the keyframes in the example above. The values of Zoom (Z), Horizontal Position (H) and Vertical Position (V) are set by keyframe 1 at the start of the clip, by keyframe 2 about a third of the way in, and by keyframe 3 at the end. The values change smoothly over intermediate frames.*

Most effects support keyframing. A few do not, either because they have no parameters or because, as with the *Speed* effect, keyframing doesn't readily apply.

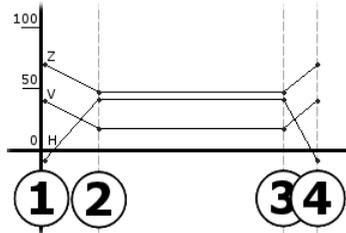
## Keyframing scenarios

For each applied effect, a clip may theoretically have as many keyframes as it has frames. In practice, you usually need only a few.

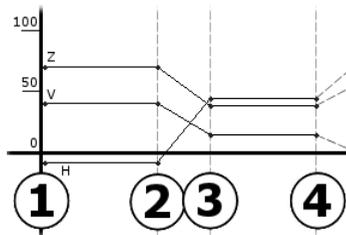


*Two keyframes are enough to smoothly vary parameter values from one setting to another throughout the clip.*

Keyframing gives you sensitive control over the way the effect is applied to the clip. It becomes a simple matter to ease an effect in and out, for example.



*With a set of four keyframes you can ease in one or more parameter values at the start of a clip and ease them out again at the end.*



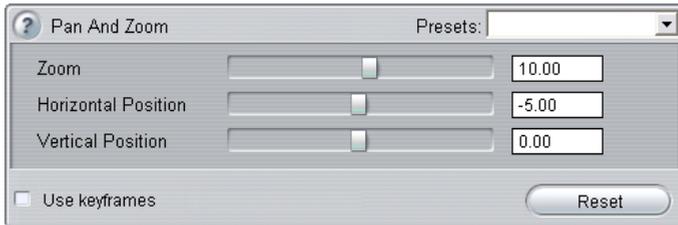
*A pan-and-zoom slideshow like that described in under “Editing image clip properties” (page 154) can be created using the Pan-and-Zoom effect on a single still-image clip. Two keyframes with identical parameters define the start and end of each view – however many are required – within the show.*

---

## Using keyframing

---

In the parameters window for any effect that supports keyframing, locate and check the *Use keyframes* box. Until you do this, the effect maintains a single set of parameter values throughout the clip.



When you switch on keyframing for an effect, two keyframes are created automatically. One is anchored to the start of the clip, and the other to its end. The parameters for both are set to the non-keyframed value. On the Movie Window timeline, a keyframe appears as a numbered flag on the video clip. The keyframe flags are displayed as long as the effect's parameter window remains open.



*Keyframes for the effect currently open in the effect parameters window are shown as numbered flags over a vertical line. The current keyframe, if any, has a highlighted flag, like that of keyframe 3 here.*

At the same time, additional controls are displayed at the bottom of the parameters window: the *Add* and *Delete* buttons, the *Current keyframe* indicator with forward and back arrows, and the *Keyframe time* counter with jog arrows.



*New controls appear at the bottom of the parameters window when keyframes are enabled.*

The *Current keyframe* indicator shows the number of the keyframe attached to the frame you are viewing in the Movie Window. Use the arrows to advance from keyframe to keyframe. As you click, the Movie Window scrubber jumps to the next keyframe position.

When you are viewing frames of your movie for which no keyframe has been defined, the indicator shows a dash. The displayed parameter values are those that will apply to the current frame during playback.

To create a keyframe at any such point, click the *Add* button, or simply start to adjust the parameters: when you do, Studio adds a keyframe automatically.



Keyframes are numbered in sequence from the start of the clip. When a new keyframe is inserted, or an old one is deleted, those that come after are renumbered to correct the sequence.



The *Delete* button is available whenever the current frame has a keyframe; that is, whenever the *Current keyframe* indicator shows a number rather than a dash.

The *Keyframe time* counter shows the time offset within the clip of the current movie time – the frame showing in the Player. The first keyframe is therefore at time zero, and the last is at an offset equal to one frame less than the duration of the clip.

When the current frame has a keyframe, its time offset can be changed with the counter’s jog arrows. The positions of the first and last keyframes cannot be adjusted. Others can move freely between the current positions of their neighboring keyframes.



*Setting the time of keyframe 3.*

---

## Previewing and rendering

---

While you are working with the *Video effects* tool, choosing effects and adjusting parameter settings, the Player gives a dynamically-updated preview of the current frame in your movie. Previewing a single frame may not be very revealing when you are working with effects that evolve over the duration of the clip (like the *Water drop* effect, page 118). In those cases, you will need to play back the clip to see the full impact of the effect you are applying.

Because many effects require intensive calculation, a fully smooth and detailed preview of the full clip won't be instantaneously available in most cases. Each time

effects are added or removed, or settings are changed, Studio commences “rendering” the clip – recalculating its final appearance – in the background without interrupting your workflow. A colored bar appears in the Timescale above the clip while background rendering is in progress.

Background rendering is optional. You can disable it, if required, in the *Project preferences* options panel (*Setup* ➤ *Project Preferences*).



## VIDEO EFFECTS LIBRARY

The plug-in video effects installed with Studio are divided into six categories, each symbolized by an icon:

- **Cleaning effects** help correct defects in the source video, such as noise and camera shake. 
- **Time effects**, like *Speed* in Studio Plus, change the tempo of playback without affecting the appearance of the video frames themselves. 
- **Style effects** like *Emboss* and *Old film* let you apply distinctive visual styles for added impact. 
- **Overlay effects** support the overlay features of Studio Plus, such as *Picture-in-picture* and *Chroma key*. 
- **Fun effects** like *Water drop* and *Lens flare* provide extra scope for creativity and fun in your movies. 
- **Color effects** let you modify the coloration of a clip, whether subtly or dramatically. 

Plug-in effects are organized into packs of one or more effects each. In this manual, we cover the five effects in the Standard RTFX pack (see page 111), which is included with all versions of Studio. Further on, we briefly describe each of the more than 20 additional effects in the Plus RTFX pack (page 114), which is included with Studio Plus. Full documentation of the parameters for the Plus effects is included in their context-sensitive on-line help, which can be viewed by clicking the *help* button  at the top left of the parameters panel for each effect, or by pressing the F1 key when the panel is open.

## Building your effects library

Studio's plug-in architecture means that you can continue to add new effects to your video effects library as they become available. Expansion packs of effects from Pinnacle and other vendors will integrate seamlessly with the program.

Some expansion effects are shipped with Studio as locked, premium content. These include Pinnacle's RTFX Volume 1 and 2 packs. Such effects can be previewed in Studio as usual, but are "watermarked" with a special graphic during playback.

Purchasing an *activation key* will remove the watermark. This can be done without leaving Studio. For more information about obtaining premium content for Studio, see "Expanding Studio" on page 11.

**Warning:** Studio's plug-in video effects are computer programs. They are theoretically capable of actions with the potential to damage or disrupt your system, such as modifying or deleting files and editing the system registry. Pinnacle advises against installing third-party plug-ins except those from trusted vendors.



## STANDARD EFFECTS

This section describes four of the five effects included in the Standard RTFX group at the top the Studio effects browser. The fifth, *Pan and zoom*, is covered under “The pan-and-zoom effect interface” on page 160.

*Auto color correction*, *Noise reduction* and *Stabilize* are classified as **cleaning effects**, which help correct defects in the source video, such as noise and camera shake.

**Note:** Studio’s video cleaning effects are general-purpose filters designed to reduce the most common problems found on a wide range of material. They are not a panacea. Your results will vary depending on the original material and the severity and nature of the problems.

---

---

### Auto color correction

---

---

This effect compensates for incorrect color balance in your video. The idea is similar to the “white balance” setting on a camcorder.

**Brightness:** Color correction may affect the brightness of the image. You can apply a manual correction, if

needed, with this slider. (Technically, the control modifies the “contrast gamma” of the image rather than its actual brightness.)

**Note:** The *Auto color correction* effect may introduce video noise into the clip as a side-effect of processing. If this happens to a troublesome degree, add on the *Noise reduction* effect described below.

---

## Noise reduction

---

This plug-in applies a noise-reduction algorithm that may improve the appearance of noisy video. In order to minimize *artifacts* (image defects caused as a side-effect of image processing), noise reduction is only performed in areas of the frame where the amount of motion falls beneath a certain threshold value.

**Motion threshold:** This slider governs the threshold value. Moving the slider rightwards increases the amount of motion the effect will tolerate, thus tending to increase the proportion of the image that will be affected. At the same time, the danger of introducing unacceptable artifacts into the video is also increased.

---

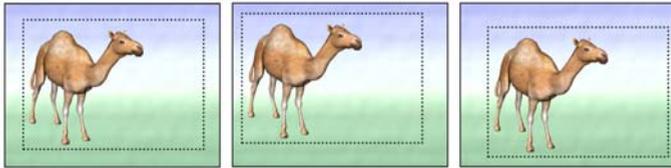
## Stabilize

---

Like the electronic image stabilization feature in many digital camcorders, this effect minimizes any jerkiness

or jitter caused by camera movement. The edge areas of the image are discarded, and the central portion is magnified by about 20% to fill the frame.

By adjusting the boundaries of the selected region on a frame-by-frame basis, Studio is able to compensate for the unwanted camera motion.



*Studio's Stabilize effect works by expanding a selected area (inner lines) to full-frame size. The area is adjusted from frame to frame to compensate for slight aiming differences caused by camera shake.*

---

## Speed

---

This sophisticated effect allows you to set the speed of any video clip over a continuous range from 10 to 500 percent of normal, in either forward or reverse motion. The length of the clip changes as you vary its speed.

If the clip contains audio, that too is sped up or slowed down. The option of maintaining the original pitch lets you avoid the sudden introduction of cartoon voices into your soundtrack.



## PLUS EFFECTS

The Studio Plus RTFX pack of video effects is included with Studio Plus. Users of other Studio versions can obtain them by upgrading to Studio Plus.

This section gives a brief description of each effect in the group, except:

- Two of the Overlay effects are covered elsewhere (*Chroma key* on page 137, and *Picture-in-picture* on page 132).
- The *HFX Filter* effect, which allows you to create and edit animated 3D transitions with Pinnacle's Hollywood FX software, opens externally to Studio, and provides its own on-line help. *HFX Filter* uses a special Pinnacle category icon .

The effects appear here in the same order as they do in the effects browser, where they are sorted by category (see page 109). Full descriptions, including all parameters, are available in the context-sensitive help when the effect parameters window is open.

---

### Blur

---

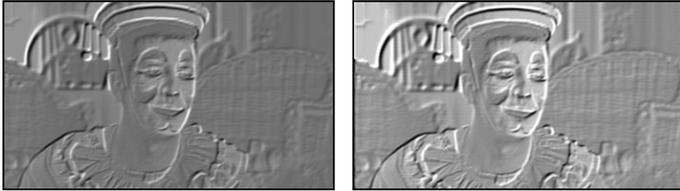
Adding *blur* to your video produces a result similar to shooting out of focus. Studio's *Blur* effect allows you to add separate intensities of horizontal and vertical blurring over the whole frame or any rectangular region within it. You can easily blur out only a selected portion of the image, such as a person's face, an effect familiar from TV news coverage.

---

## Emboss

---

This specialized effect simulates the look of an embossed or bas-relief sculpture. The strength of the effect is controlled by the *Amount* slider.



*Emboss can often be enhanced by adjusting contrast and brightness with the Color Correction effect (right).*

---

## Old film

---

Old movies have a number of traits that are usually considered undesirable: grainy images caused by early photographic development processes, spots and streaks from dust and lint adhering to the film, and intermittent vertical lines where the film has been scratched.



The *Old film* effect lets you simulate these defects to lend your pristine video the appearance of movies that have suffered the ravages of time.

---

## Soften

---

The *Soften* effect applies a gentle blurring to your video. This can be helpful for anything from adding a romantic haze to minimizing wrinkles. A slider controls the strength of the effect.

---

## Stained glass

---

This effect simulates the appearance of viewing the video through a pane of irregular polygons arranged into a mosaic.

Sliders let you control the average dimensions of the polygonal “tiles” in the image and the width of the dark edging between neighboring tiles from zero (no edging) to the maximum value.



*Three variations of the Stained Glass effect*

---

## Luma key

---

This overlay effect works very similarly to *Chroma Key* (page 137), but in this case the transparent areas of the foreground image are defined by luminance rather than color information.

---

## 2D Editor

---

Use this effect to enlarge the image and set which portion of it will be displayed, or to shrink the image and optionally add a border and shadow.

---

## Earthquake

---

The Studio Plus *Earthquake* effect jiggles the video frame to simulate a seismic event, whose severity you control with sliders for speed and intensity.

---

## Lens flare

---

This effect simulates the flaring seen when direct bright light overexposes an area of a film or video image.

You can set the orientation, size and type of the main light. The first option of those shown below lets you remove the light, though its secondary effects – rays and reflections – are still generated.



*The eight Type options.*

---

## Magnify

---

This effect lets you apply a virtual magnifying lens to a selected portion of the video frame. You can position the lens in three dimensions, moving it horizontally and vertically within the frame, and nearer to or further from the image.

---

## Motion blur

---

This effect simulates the blurring that results when a camera is moved rapidly during exposure. Both the angle and the amount of blurring can be set.



*Unblurred image (L) and horizontally (C) and diagonally (R) blurred versions.*

---

## Water drop

---

This effect simulates the impact of a drop falling onto the surface of water, producing expanding, concentric ripples.



*Stages in the Water Drop effect (“Big drop” preset).*

---

## Water wave

---

This effect adds distortion to simulate a series of ocean waves passing across the video frame as the clip progresses. Parameters allow you to adjust the number, spacing, direction and depth of the waves.

---

## Black and white

---

This effect subtracts some or all of the color information from the source video, with results ranging from partly desaturated (the “Faded” preset) to fully monochrome (“Black and white”). The *Amount* slider controls the strength of the effect.

---

## Color correction

---

The four sliders in the parameters panel for this effect control the coloration of the current clip in terms of:

**Brightness:** The intensity of light

**Contrast:** The range of light and dark values

**Hue:** The location of light on the spectrum

**Saturation:** The quantity of pure color, from gray to fully saturated

---

## Invert

---

Despite its name, the *Invert* effect doesn't turn the display upside-down. Rather than the image itself, it is the *color values* in the image that are inverted: each pixel is redrawn in its complementary light intensity and/or color, producing a readily recognizable but recolored image.

This effect uses the YCrCb color model, which has one channel for *luminance* (brightness information) and two for chrominance (color information). The YCrCb model is often used in digital video applications.

---

## Lighting

---

The Lighting tool enables correction and enhancement of existing video shot with poor or insufficient lighting. It is particularly suitable for fixing backlit outdoor sequences where the subject's features are in shadow.

---

## Posterize

---

This Studio Plus effect lets you control the number of colors used to render each frame of the clip, all the way from the full original palette down to two colors (black and white) as you drag the *Amount* slider from left to right. Regions of similar color are coalesced into larger flat areas as the palette shrinks.

---

## RGB color balance

---

*RGB Color Balance* in Studio Plus serves a dual role. On the one hand, you can use it to correct video that suffers from unwanted coloration. On the other, you can apply a color bias to achieve a particular effect. For example, night scenes can often be heightened by adding blue and reducing brightness. You can even make video shot in daylight look like a night scene.

---

## Sepia

---

This Studio Plus effect imparts the appearance of antique photography to the clip by rendering it in sepia tones rather than full color. The strength of the effect is controlled with the *Amount* slider.

---

## White balance

---

Most video cameras have a “white balance” option for automatically adjusting their color response to ambient lighting conditions. If this option is switched off or not fully effective, the video image coloration will suffer.

Studio’s *White balance* effect corrects the problem by allowing you to specify which color should be taken as “white” in this image. The adjustment needed to make that reference color white is then applied to every pixel of the image. If the reference white is well chosen, this can make the coloration seem more natural.



## THE SMARTMOVIE MUSIC VIDEO TOOL

Creating a music video seems like a big job, even with the convenient editing features of Studio. Dozens of brief clips must be carefully aligned to the beat of the soundtrack, in order that the music and video are properly coordinated.

With Studio's *SmartMovie* tool, however, you  can construct a dynamic, beat-synchronized music video almost instantly, in your choice of styles and using any combination of video footage and music.

You can make slideshows, too. *SmartMovie* can create an instant slideshow from any set of still images, in a choice of styles and with synchronized music.

[In order to create a music video, add some music to the music track.](#)

[Click here to add music to your project.](#)

The *SmartMovie* tool walks you through the creation process with simple step-by-step instructions. To begin, use the Album to locate the video scenes or still images

you want to include, and drag them onto the Movie Window.

**Tip:** The Timeline view of the Movie Window is recommended when working with audio clips.

With the visuals in place, add a SmartSound, CD audio or digital music (**wav**, **mp3**) clip to the *background music* track. The duration of this clip – and not the amount of visual material you supply – determines the length of your music video.

## SmartMovie styles

Select a *style* from the dropdown list at the top of the *SmartMovie* tool window. A variety of styles is offered for both music video and slideshow projects.



*A brief description of each style is displayed in the status balloon as you scroll through the style list.*

For video styles, you will get the best results if the starting duration of your video footage is about double the length of the soundtrack. Each of the slideshow styles has its own ideal ratio between the number of pictures and the length of the song. The *status balloon* provides guidance for getting the proportions right.

For 13 slides, this style works best with a music length between 52.00 and 1:37.15

## SmartMovie options

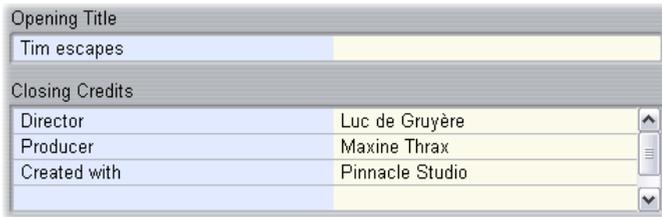
The *Use clips in random order* option lets you mix up the visual material without regard to its initial sequence. This option is the default with some styles. It tends to give a finished product with a relatively uniform texture, but sacrifices narrative continuity.



The *Relative volume* slider adjusts the prominence of the *background music* track relative to the other audio tracks. Move the slider all the way to the right if you want to hear *only* the music track in the finished video.

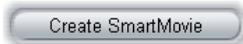


The last configuration step is to enter the text to use for the opening and closing titles. Each text line consists of two edit fields. Use Tab and Shift+Tab to jump between the left and right fields.



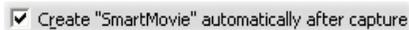
### The big moment...

Finally, click the *Create SmartMovie* button and sit back while Studio generates your movie.



### Using SmartMovie from Capture mode

Studio lets you jump directly from capturing your video right into the *SmartMovie* tool. To use this option, simply initiate your capture as usual, then check the applicable box on the Start Capture dialog.



# Two-track editing with Studio Plus

Studio Plus brings the power of multitrack video editing to Studio with the addition of an auxiliary video track on the Movie Window Timeline called the *overlay* track. Now you can use advanced picture-in-picture and chroma-key effects while retaining the convenience of Studio's streamlined and intuitive user interface.

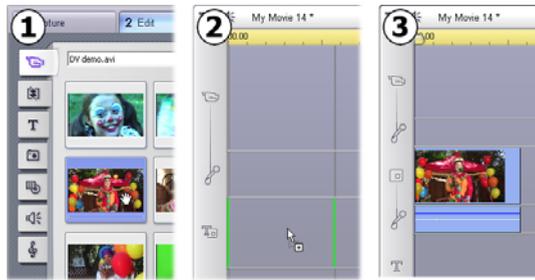
---

## Introducing the *overlay* track

---

Upon installation, the Timeline displays the five tracks familiar to long-time Studio users: the *video* track with its *original audio* track, and the *title*, *sound effect* and *music* tracks.

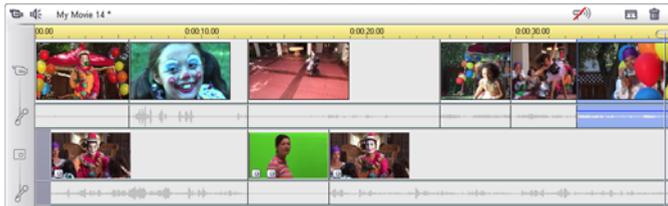
To open the new *overlay* track, drag a video clip from the Album ❶ into the Movie Window and drop it on the *title* track ❷. The *overlay* track instantly appears with the clip properly positioned upon it ❸.



*Drop video on the title track to open the overlay track.*

Along with the *overlay* track, Studio adds an *overlay audio* track to accommodate the video clip's original audio information.

Once the *overlay* video and audio tracks have been opened, Studio no longer accepts video clips on the *title* track. Drag clips from the Album directly onto either the *video* or *overlay* track as required.



*Video clips on the video and overlay tracks.*

## Displaying and hiding the *overlay* track

As we have just seen, the *overlay* video and audio tracks are displayed when you add your first overlay clip. Similarly, when you remove the last clip from these tracks, Studio again hides them from view.

This default behavior help keep the Movie Window uncluttered, but if you are making frequent use of overlay video, you might prefer to have the track visible at all times. This can be achieved by activating the *Always show overlay track* command on the pop-up

“context” menu that appears when you click on the Movie Window with your right mouse button.



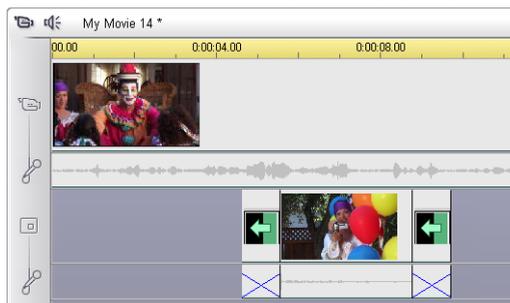
---

## A/B editing

---

The second video track in Studio Plus often simplifies the editing tasks – insert edits, L-cuts and J-cuts – discussed under “Advanced Timeline editing” on page 90.

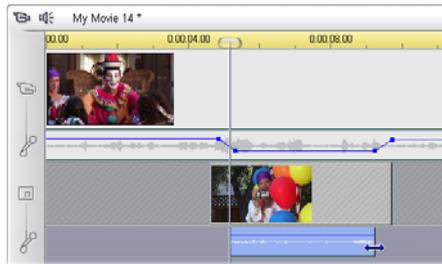
An *insert edit*, for instance, becomes a trivial operation: simply drag the clip to be inserted onto the *overlay* track, and trim it as desired. (See “The Picture-in-picture tool” below if you want the second video to appear at reduced size so that only part of the main video is obscured.)



*An insert edit on the overlay track. The main video is obscured while the B clip is playing.*

In the J-cut and the L-cut, the audio portion of a clip begins a little before (J) or a little after (L) the video.

They are often used together to soften the start and end of an inserted clip.



*Split editing on the overlay track. The overlay video track has been locked, allowing the B clip's audio to be trimmed. The main audio can be reduced or muted as needed.*

---

## The Picture-in-picture tool

---

Picture-in-picture (often abbreviated to “PIP”) – the inclusion of an additional video frame within the main video – is a versatile effect familiar from its use in professional TV productions.

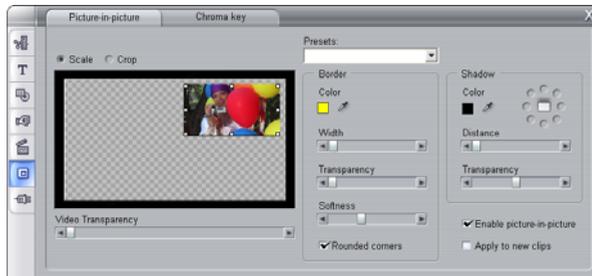


*Picture-in-picture with optional border, shadow and rounded corners (left). Split-screen effects, like the vertical split at right, are among the variations that show off the versatility of the PIP tool.*

To use picture-in-picture, start in the usual way by dragging some video clips onto the Movie Window Timeline. Drop the clips you want for background video onto the *video* track. Put the foreground clip – the PIP clip – on the *overlay* track under the main clip.

**Note:** If you are planning a split-screen effect, like the one shown at right in the illustration above, it doesn't matter which of the two clips goes on which track.

Now select the foreground clip and open the *Picture-in-picture and Chroma key (PIP/CK)*  tool, the sixth in the Movie Window's video toolbox. We usually refer to the two aspects of the tool separately as the *Picture-in-picture* and *Chroma key* tools.



*The Picture-in-picture and Chroma key (PIP/CK) tool is really two tools in one. Because they are used independently, we treat them as separate tools. This illustration shows the PIP side of the tool. Click the Chroma Key tab at the top of the tool to switch.*

## Picture-in-picture tool controls

Most of the left-hand side of the PIP tool is taken up with an interactive *layout area* where you can both view and modify the dimensions, placement and cropping of the overlay video. The adjustments you make are reflected in the Player preview as you work.

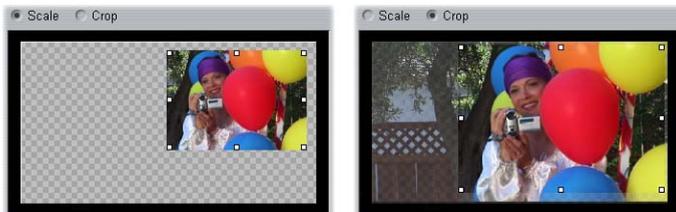
The layout area has two modes, selected by the *Scale* and *Crop* radio buttons.

**Scale mode:** The gray, checked region in the layout area represents the transparent portion of the overlay frame, through which any underlying video can be seen. In typical PIP usage, this accounts for most of the screen, the overlay being sized small enough that the main video is not unnecessarily obscured. You can modify the PIP frame in three ways:

- Click on the PIP frame and drag it within the layout area to reposition it within the main video frame.
- Use the center control points on the edges of the PIP frame to change its dimensions arbitrarily.
- Use the control points at the corners of the PIP frame to change its size but not its proportions (“aspect ratio”).

**Crop mode:** In this mode the layout area represents the entire overlay frame, regardless of its actual dimensions as set in Scale mode. The rectangle defined by the control points shows which portion of the frame is visible. Outside the visible area, the frame is semi-transparent, letting the checked pattern show through.

As in Scale mode, the side control points allow for free adjustment of the crop rectangle, whereas the corner control points preserve its aspect ratio.

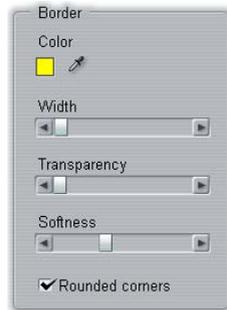


*The PIP tool in Scale (L) and Crop (R) modes.*

**Presets:** Choose a preset name to set up all the PIP controls at once to the predetermined values associated with that name. You can choose a preset as a first approximation to your desired settings, then adjust them manually until you get exactly what you want.

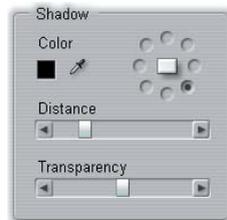
**Transparency:** Use this slider if you want the underlying video to show through the overlay itself. Moving the slider to the right makes the overlay, with its border and shadow, increasingly transparent.

**Border:** These controls set the color, width and transparency of the border that will be drawn around the overlay frame. Set the width to zero (slider all the way to the left) if you don't want a border at all. See page 140 for information on how to use the color controls.



The *Softness* slider controls the amount of blurring on the outside edge of the border. Move the slider left for a hard edge, or right to blend the border with the background video. Check the *Rounded corners* box if you want to round off the corners of the PIP rectangle.

**Shadow:** These controls set the color, width, angle and transparency of the drop shadow effect that gives the illusion of the overlay frame floating above the background video. Set the width (using the *Distance* slider) to zero if you don't want a shadow to appear.



The dial-shaped shadow-angle control gives you eight choices for the placement of the shadow relative to the frame.

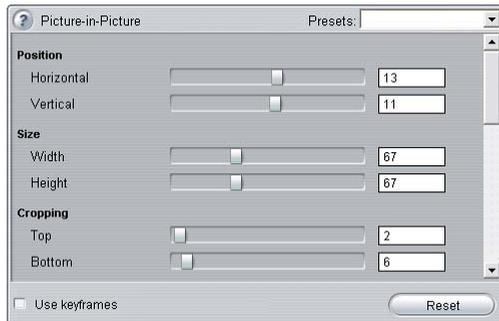
**Enable picture-in-picture:** This checkbox allows you to turn the PIP effect on and off.

**Apply to new clips:** This option is handy when you want to set up the same PIP settings for a number of different clips. As long the option is checked, PIP will automatically be applied to each new clip that you drag onto the *overlay* track, using the same settings that were displayed the last time the tool was open.

## The PIP effect interface

If you prefer to enter your PIP parameter settings numerically rather than graphically, you can turn to an alternative interface provided by the *Video effects* tool. You can also combine the two methods, using the PIP tool's graphical interface to specify the initial settings, then fine tuning them with the numerical effect parameters.

The available parameter settings of the *Picture-in-picture* effect are almost identical to those offered by the PIP tool:



*Parameter settings for the Picture-in-picture effect.*

**Position:** The *Horizontal* and *Vertical* sliders set the offset of the center of the PIP frame from the center of the background frame.

**Size:** The *Width* and *Height* sliders set the size of the PIP frame as a percentage of its original dimensions. Cropping, if used, can further reduce the final size of the PIP frame on the screen.

**Cropping:** The four sliders in this group trim away a percentage of the original PIP video frame, allowing you to remove unnecessary portions of the image and focus on the main subject.

**Video:** The *Transparency* slider lets the background video show through the PIP overlay to any desired degree.

**Border:** The parameters in this group are equivalent to the Border settings on the PIP tool, allowing you to set the overlay border's color, thickness, transparency and edge softness, and to select the rounded corners option if desired. One bonus of the effect interface is that there are separate *Width* and *Height* controls to control the border thickness, rather than the single setting provided by the tool.

**Shadow:** As with the Border group, these parameters are essentially the same as those on the PIP tool, except that the *Horizontal offset* and *Vertical offset* parameters afford slightly more flexibility in positioning the shadow than do the tool's *Distance* and *Angle* settings.

---

## The Chroma key tool

---

Chroma key is a widely-used technique that allows foreground objects to appear in a video scene even though they were not present – and often could not have been present – when the scene was shot. When an

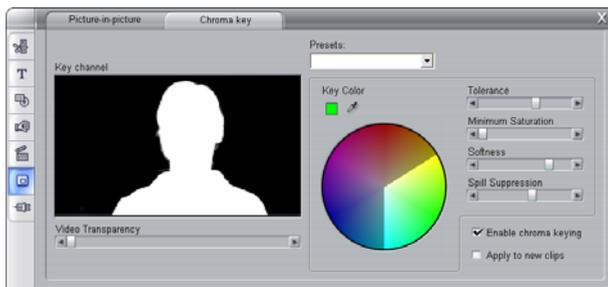
action star tumbles into a volcano, or battles a giant cockroach, or saves the crew with a daring space-walk, the chances are that chroma key or a related technology was involved in the scene.

Chroma key effects are often called “blue-screen” or “green-screen” effects because the foreground action is shot in front of a uniform blue or green background. The background is then electronically removed, leaving only the foreground action to be superimposed on the actual background of the final scene, which has been separately prepared.



*Creating a scene with chroma key: A clip on the video track (L) is chosen as the background for a green-screen clip on the overlay track (C). Chroma keying removes the green to complete the scene (R).*

Blue and green are the generally-preferred colors for chroma key use because their removal from an image will not affect human skin tones, but in principle any hue can be used with Studio’s chroma key tool.



*The chroma key side of the PIP/CK tool.*

As with picture-in-picture, the first step in using chroma key is to drag some video clips onto the Timeline. Drop the clips you want for background video onto the *video* track. The foreground clip, which should have a uniform, highly-saturated background like the center clip in the illustration above, goes on the *overlay* track below the main clip.

With the clips in place, select the foreground clip  and open the *Picture-in-picture and Chroma key* (PIP/CK) tool. It is the sixth tool in the Movie Window’s video toolbox. Select the *Chroma key* tab to display the controls you will need.

## Chroma-key tool controls

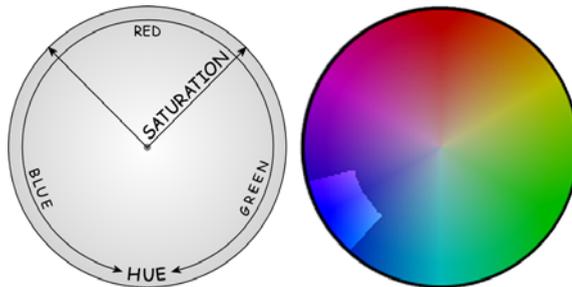
The chroma key tool constructs a “mask”, shown in the *Key channel* graphic on the left side of the tool, where the transparent part of the frame is drawn in black, and the opaque part – the part you will see in the final video – is drawn in white. Most of the remaining controls are used to define exactly which areas of the frame will be included in the transparent part of the mask by setting the “key color” and related properties.

**Transparency:** Use this slider if you want the underlying video to show through the normally opaque overlay. Moving the slider to the right makes the overlay, with its border and shadow, increasingly transparent.

**Presets:** The tool provides two presets, called “Green screen key” and “Blue screen key”. These provide good starting points for setting up the tool if you are using one of the standard chroma key colors.

**Key color:** Use the color swatch or eye dropper buttons to select the color that will be removed from the video frame leaving only the desired foreground. See page 140 for information on how to use the color controls.

Rather than an actual color, you are really selecting only a *hue*, without regard to the other properties – *saturation* and *intensity* – that in combination with hue make a complete color specification. The chosen hue is shown by the position of the highlighted region on the circumference of the *color circle* display.



*The color circle on the Chroma key tool highlights a range of hues (around the circumference) and color saturation values (along the radius). Any pixel in the overlay frame whose hue and saturation fall within the highlighted region will be treated as transparent.*

**Color tolerance:** This slider controls the width of the range of hues that will be recognized as belonging to the “key color”. Moving the slider to the right increases the angle of the arc covered by the highlighted region on the color circle.

**Saturation minimum:** Saturation is the amount of hue in a color. A pixel with zero saturation (corresponding to the center of the color circle) has no hue: it falls on the “gray scale”, whose extremes are white and black. Chroma key works most effectively when the background is highly and uniformly saturated, allowing a high setting of this slider. In the real world, vagaries of lighting and apparatus often result in a background that falls short of the ideal. Moving the slider left allows a wider range of saturation values to be

matched, indicated by a highlighted region that extends farther towards the center of the color circle.

**Softness:** This slider controls the density of the underlying video. When it is positioned all the way to the left, the main video is entirely black. As you move the slider to the right, the main video is brought up to full density.

**Spill suppression:** Adjusting this slider may help suppress video noise or fringing along the edges of the foreground object.

**Enable chroma keying:** This checkbox allows you to turn the chroma key effect on and off.

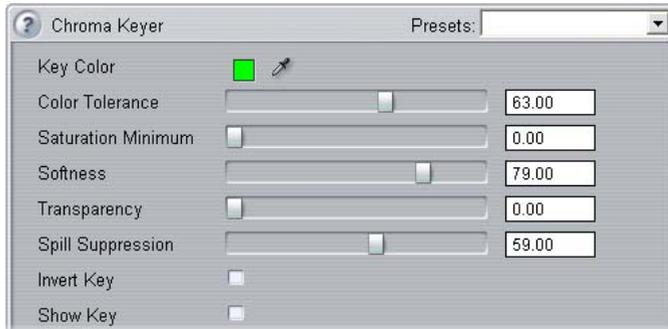
**Apply to new clips:** This option is handy when you want to set up the same chroma key settings for a number of different clips. As long as the option is checked, chroma key will automatically be applied to each new clip that you drag onto the *overlay* track, using the same settings that were displayed the last time the tool was open.

## The chroma key effect interface

If you prefer to enter your chroma key parameter settings numerically rather than graphically, you can turn to an alternative interface provided by the *Video effects* tool. You can also combine the two methods, using the chroma key tool's graphical interface to specify the initial settings, then fine tuning them with the numerical effect parameters.

The Studio Plus *Chroma key* plug-in provides parameter settings almost identical to those offered by the chroma key tool, but provides one more option, *Invert Key*. When this option is activated, the normally opaque parts of the key are treated as transparent, and the transparent parts as opaque, so that the underlying

video shows through everywhere *except* for the area masked by the colored screen.



*Parameter settings for the Chroma key effect.*

The chroma key tool provides a special view of the transparency key it has generated. To get this view in the Player while working with the effect parameters, click the *Show Key* checkbox.



*Using Show Key: At left the key, at right the real thing*

## Chroma key tips

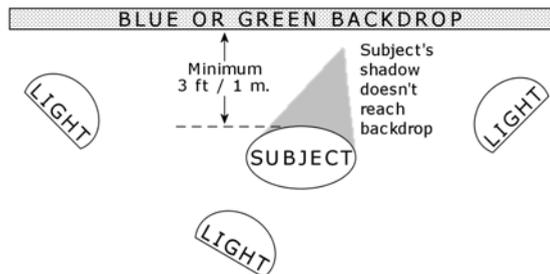
No matter how good your software may be, successful use of chroma key depends on carefully setting up your shot, and may require experimentation to get the details just right. Here are some tips to get you started:

**Light the backdrop as evenly as possible:** Very often, background coloring that looks flat to the naked eye

will prove on playback to have areas that are too dark or too washed out to work well for chroma keying, which favors even, saturated color. Use multiple lights on the backdrop to ensure that it is well-lit across its whole area and without hotspots. Diffuse sunlight, as produced by a light overcast sky, can work well when shooting out of doors is an option.

**Note:** A professional background cloth for chroma key work is available as an inexpensive purchase at the [Pinnacle web-site](#).

**Don't let the subject shadow the screen:** Arrange your subject and foreground lighting so that no shadows fall upon the backdrop. The subject should be at least a meter (three feet) in front of the backdrop.



*Setting up a chroma key shot. The backdrop is well and evenly lit, and positioned well behind the subject so that shadows do not interfere. The lighting of the subject should be arranged to suit the background that will be keyed into the shot.*

**Choose foreground colors carefully:** Don't have your subject wear green if you are shooting on a green screen, or blue for a blue screen; those areas will be removed if they are taken to match the key color. You have to be especially careful about this when working with less even backdrops that require you to set a wider color tolerance in the chroma keyer.

**Make a smooth profile:** Chroma keyers do better with a smooth edge than a jagged or complex one, so try to have your subject present a smooth profile to the camera. Hair is particularly tricky, and should be slicked down if possible. If the subject can wear a hat, so much the better.

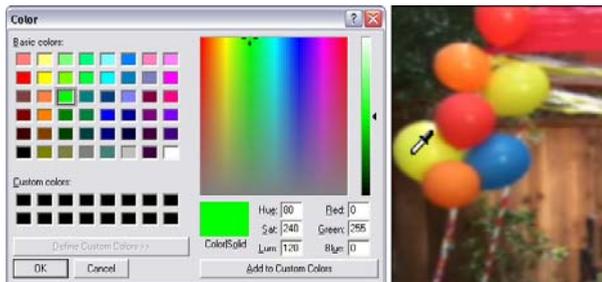
**Use tight framing:** The wider your frame, the larger your background needs to be, and the more difficult it is to control your shot. One way to keep things simple is to shoot your subject from the waist up rather than in full view.

---

## Selecting colors

---

  To select colors in tools and effects that provide a color parameter, click either on the *color swatch* (left) or the *eye dropper* button. The first opens a standard color picker dialog; the second lets you choose a color by clicking anywhere on the screen.



*Two ways to set colors: The Windows color picker dialog (L) opens when you click the color swatch button provided in some tools and effects. Click the eye-dropper button to select a color from the Player preview window or elsewhere using a mouse pointer in the form of an eye-dropper (R).*

# Transitions

A *transition* is an animated effect that eases – or emphasizes – the passage from one clip to the next. Fades, wipes and dissolves are common types of transition. Others are more exotic, and may even involve sophisticated 3-D graphics.

Transitions are stored in their own section of the Album (see “The Transitions section” on page 51). To use a transition, drag it from the Album into the Movie Window and drop it beside any video clip or still image.



*A series of transitions (the icons between the video clips) in Storyboard view.*

In Timeline view, you can drop the transition on either the main *video* track, the *overlay* track, or the *title* track. On the *video* track, the transition provides a bridge between two full-screen clips (or between one clip and blackness if the transition has only one neighbor, as at the beginning of the movie). On the *overlay* and *title* tracks, the transition bridges two neighboring clips (or one clip and transparency).



*Diagram: Five snapshots from the life of a 2-second diagonal wipe transition.*

If a transition is to last for two seconds (the default transition duration in a fresh Studio installation), the second clip begins to run two seconds before the first clip is finished. At the outset, only the first clip is visible; by the end, the second clip has completely replaced the first. The details of what happens in between, as the first clip is gradually removed and the second gradually appears, depend on the transition type. Since the video clips overlap, the total duration of the pair of clips is reduced by the duration of the transition.



*Here is the same transition as above, this time using actual video. For clarity, the transition boundary in the three center frames has been emphasized in white. Both clips keep running during the transition.*

---

## Transition types and their uses

---

Like all effects, transitions should be used not for their own sake but to serve the overall needs of your movie. Well-chosen transitions can subtly reinforce the meaning of the movie and how it plays without drawing attention to themselves. Observing the way transitions are used in professionally-produced video

on television will suggest many ways to improve your own movies. Generally, it is advisable to refrain from overusing transitions that cause abrupt changes or otherwise draw attention to themselves: there's a big difference between a subtle dissolve and a heart-shaped wipe.

The basic transitions discussed below – fades, dissolves, wipes, slides and pushes – are all among the first group of standard transitions (the “2D transitions”) in the Album.

A set of more elaborate transitions is found in the Alpha Magic group, which is the second entry in the dropdown list of transition groups in the Album.

The many other groups on the list all belong to the Hollywood FX, a large set of complex transitions featuring three-dimensional graphics. The Hollywood FX transitions are discussed at the end of this section (page 144).

**Cut:** A cut is the minimal transition – an instantaneous shift from one scene to the next. In Studio, it is the default transition. A cut is appropriate when there is a strong inherent connection between one clip and the next; for instance, when the camera changes position or angle within a scene.

**Fade:** This transition fades into the beginning of a video clip from a black screen, or from the end of a clip to a black screen. A fade dropped between two clips creates a *fade down* followed by a *fade up*. The fade transition is the first transition icon in the Album.



A fade is usually used at the beginning and end of a movie, or when there is a large break in continuity, as when a new section begins. For example, a movie of a play might benefit from inserting a fade between acts.

**Dissolve:** A dissolve is similar to a fade, except that the new scene begins to fade up even while the old one is fading down. The visual overlap this produces is less dramatic than a fade, but less abrupt than a cut. A short dissolve can take the edge off a cut, while a long dissolve is useful to suggest the passage of time.



**Wipe, slide and push:** In each of these standard transition types, the incoming video is gradually revealed behind an edge that moves across the frame in a certain direction. The Album icons shown with this paragraph represent a leftward wipe, a down-and-left slide and a rightward push respectively.



In a *wipe* transition, both the old and new video occupy their normal position in the frame throughout the transition. The new video comes into view as the transition edge crosses the frame, rather like new wallpaper being rolled on over old.

A *slide* is similar to a wipe, but in this case the frame of the new video slides across the screen until it reaches its home position. The effect is reminiscent of a blind being pulled down over a window.

A *push* is similar to a slide, except that the old video is pushed out of the frame as the new video enters, like advancing a filmstrip from one frame to the next.

## Hollywood FX for Studio

Pinnacle Systems' Hollywood FX includes a large number of dramatic 3-D transitions and effects. These are ideal for opening sequences, sports and action footage, or music videos. Hollywood FX satisfies professional expectations for quality without sacrificing ease of use.



A basic set of fully-functional Hollywood FX is included with Studio, along with “watermarked” demo versions of many others. Apart from the watermark (a special graphic superimposed on part of the video), the demo effects can be previewed normally within Studio. If you like the demo versions, you can purchase them in the same way as other premium content in Studio. For more information, see “Expanding Studio” on page 11.

Also available for purchase on-line is the HFX Creator editing tool for Hollywood FX. This software lets you customize your Hollywood FX, or create new ones from scratch. HFX Creator includes advanced keyframe editing for flight paths and all parameters, powerful warp plug-ins, and a 3D text generator. You can also create a wide range of 3D MultiWindow Effects using external video sources, and add real-life 3D objects and lighting.



To initiate the purchase of HFX Creator, click the *Edit* button in the *Clip properties* tool for any Hollywood FX transition.

---

## Previewing transitions in your movie

---

Studio lets you preview transitions in the Player. Just drag and drop a transition into the Movie Window, click the *Play* button (or hit [Space]) and see how the transition works with your material.

You can also preview transitions by scrubbing through them in the Player or on the Timeline of the Movie Window.

## Background rendering of Hollywood FX

Background rendering is an optional feature in which the computation needed to create a detailed preview of Hollywood FX transitions and other effects is carried out as a “background task” with no interruption of your workflow. You can configure background rendering on the *Video and audio preferences* options panel (*Setup* ➤ *Video and Audio Preferences*). See “Video and audio preferences” on page 253 for details.

Until the rendering of a transition is complete, the Player will preview it at reduced resolution and frame rate. A colored bar appears in the Timescale above the clip while *background rendering* is in progress.

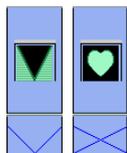
---

## Audio transitions

---

Video clips in the Movie Window normally have synchronous audio. In the absence of a transition, both video and audio cut from one clip to the next. When a transition is placed between two clips, the audio cross-fades (the audio equivalent of a dissolve).

The only exception to this rule is the Fade transition, which takes the audio completely out then back in again.



*Normal transitions cause a cross-fade in the audio (left). In a Fade transition (right), the audio fades down then up along with the video.*

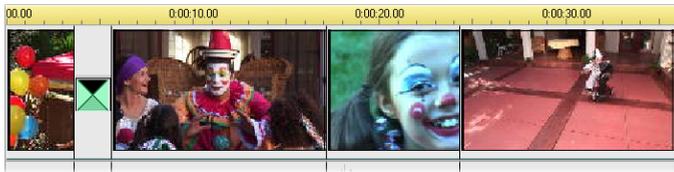
---

## The Ripple Transition command

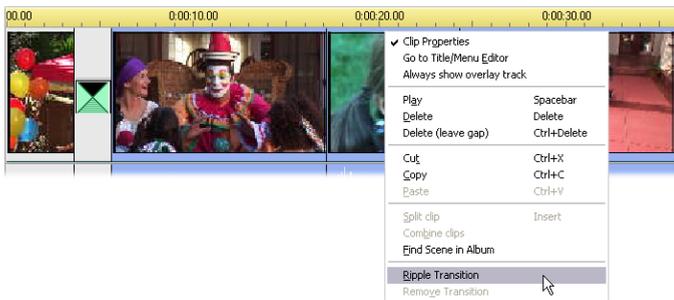
---

This Studio feature is especially useful for creating a quick slideshow from a set of still images, or a video pictorial from a set of short clips. Such a presentation is more interesting if you connect each pair of clips with a transition. *Ripple Transition* gives you a quick and easy way of achieving that.

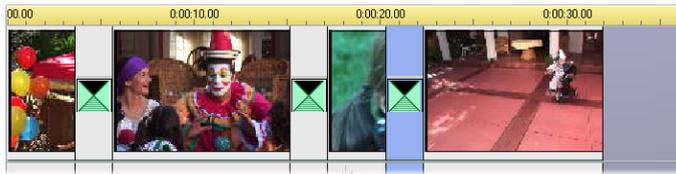
Begin with a set of a clips on the Timeline, then add a transition of the desired type between the first two clips.



Now select all the clips except the first, click on any of them with the right mouse-button, and select *Ripple Transition* from the pop-up menu.



Studio inserts a duplicate of the original transition between each pair of selected clips.



## TRIMMING TRANSITIONS

Although transitions are not true clips, they are handled very similarly to clips within Studio's editing environment. Like clips, you can trim transitions either directly on the Movie Window Timeline, or by using the *Clip properties* tool.

See "Trimming on the Timeline using handles" on page 81 for a discussion of the first method. The maximum allowed duration of a transition is one frame less than the shorter of the neighboring clips.

---

### Trimming with the *Clip properties* tool

---

The *Toolbox* ➤ *Modify Clip Properties* menu  command invokes the *Clip properties* tool for the selected clip. For all transition types, this tool provides

previewing controls, and the ability to set two properties:

- To set the duration of the transition, change the value in the *Duration* counter. A transition's duration must always be less – if only by a single frame – than the shorter of its neighboring clips.
- The *Name* text field lets you assign a custom name to the clip to replace the default one assigned by Studio. The *Name* field is provided on the *Clip properties* tool for all clip types. Clip names are used by the Movie Window's List view, and can also be viewed as fly-by labels when your mouse hovers over clips in the Storyboard view.

Many transition effects also support a “reverse direction” option, which causes the transition animation to run backwards, allowing a rotary wipe, for example, to be either clockwise or counterclockwise. The *Reverse* checkbox is enabled when the current transition supports this option.

If you have purchased the HFX Creator application, you can open it within Studio by clicking the *Edit* button on the *Clip properties* tool for Hollywood FX transitions. HFX Creator is an external editing program with many options, whose use is described in its accompanying documentation.

## **Previewing in the *Clip properties* tool**

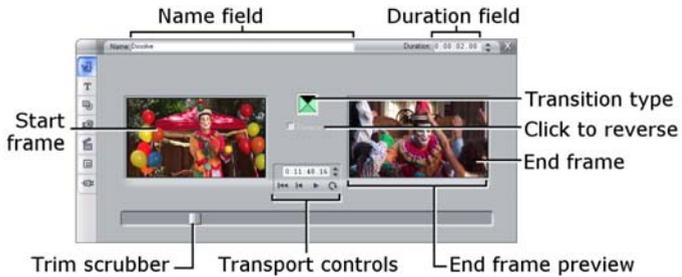
The *Clip properties* tool provides previewing controls for transitions similar to those for video clips. See “Trimming with the *Clip properties* tool” on page 86 for more information.

The preview areas show the last full frame of the outgoing clip and the first full frame of the incoming

one. The preview frames update as you edit the *Duration* field.

The transport controls let you preview the transition effect in the Player either frame by frame or at full speed. The *Loop play/Pause* button  cycles through the transition repeatedly at normal playback speed.

Both the counter (with its associated jog buttons) and the scrubber give you direct access to any desired point within the transition.



# Still images

Video usually means images in motion, but most productions also include stationary titles or graphics, and may include other types of still image as well. The still images you can use in your movies include:

- All types of text captions and graphics, including scrolling credits and “crawled” messages.
- Photos or drawings stored in disk-based image files.
- Individual video frames obtained with the *Frame grabber* tool.
- “Disc menus” for DVD and VCD authoring. These are covered in *Chapter 9: Disc menus*.

Any of these still image types can be treated in either of two ways, depending on which track you drop them onto in the Movie Window Timeline:

- To add a *full-screen image* with a solid background, add the image to the *video* track.
- To add an image so that it appears in your movie with a *transparent background*, superimposed over the clips on the *video* track, place it on the *title* track. The color of the top-left pixel of the image will be treated as transparent when the image is placed on this track. For best results, you may need to prepare the image in an image-editing application.

**Note:** Studio Plus users have an additional option, the *overlay* track, for adding their images to the Timeline. See *Chapter 6: Two-track editing with Studio Plus*, for details.

The Album has separate sections for titles, bitmapped images and disc menus. All these resources are stored as separate files on your hard drive. You can also create titles and disc menus of your own in Studio's Title Editor and add them directly to your movie without first saving them as separate files (see *Chapter 10: The Title Editor*). Similarly, still video frames can be added directly from the *Frame grabber* tool (see "The Frame Grabber" on page 161).

## Full-screen images

A full-screen image is one that is placed on the *video* track. It fills the entire screen, replacing the video. When the preceding video clip ends, Studio plays the still image clip. The visual effect is that the video ends, and is replaced by the graphic until the next clip begins.



## Overlay images

An overlay image is one that is placed on the *title* track. It is superimposed on the current video clip, without replacing the video.



## Controlling transparency in overlay images

Viewed in the Album, or in a graphics editor, an overlay image appears to have a solid background. When you place it on the *title* track, however, the background disappears, allowing the video to show through.

Studio uses the color of the top-left pixel of the image to determine which areas will be transparent. Pixels that match this color are not drawn when the image is rendered over video.

This scheme works well for still images that have consistent solid background colors. Sometimes, you may have to edit the top-left pixel of a bitmapped image to get the transparency effect you want. Any image-editing program – even the Windows Paint accessory – will do the job.

The automatic transparency feature applies to images that are imported into Studio via the Title Editor as well as those that are accessed through the Album.

## Making a slideshow

If you would like to assemble a quick slideshow of still images or video clips, you may want to take advantage of Studio's Ripple Transition feature to quickly insert a chosen transition between each pair of clips or images. See page 147 for details.

## Applying effects

Most of Studio's plug-in video effects can be applied to still images. (The exceptions are effects like *Speed* that only make sense for moving video.) See "Using video effects" on page 98 for detailed information.



## EDITING STILL IMAGES

As with other types of clip, you can trim still images directly on the Movie Window Timeline, or by using the *Clip properties* tool.

See “Trimming on the Timeline using handles” on page 81 for a discussion of the first method. The difference with a still image clip is that you can extend it to any duration you choose, whereas a video clip can be no longer than the original Album scene.

Effects like *Blur*, *Posterize* and *Color correction* can be applied to still image clips of all types in the same way as to video clips. See “Video effects – the basic set” on page 109.

---

### Editing image clip properties

---

The *Toolbox* ➤ *Modify Clip Properties* menu  command opens a version of the *Clip properties* tool appropriate for the type of the currently-selected clip. The topmost tool icon in the video toolbox can also be used.

With *bitmapped images*, including ordinary photos and image files, and with disc menus, double-click the clip for a third way to access the tool. Double-clicking a title, however, opens it directly into the Title Editor instead.

All versions of the *Clip properties* tool allow you to set the duration and name of the current clip, as follows:

- To set the length of time the still image is displayed, change the value in the *Duration* counter.
- The *Name* text field lets you assign a custom name to the clip to replace the default one assigned by Studio. Clip names are used by the Movie Window's Text view, and can also be viewed on the fly-by labels that appear when your mouse hovers over clips in the Storyboard view.

The *Clip properties* tool for disc menus is described in *Chapter 9: Disc menus*. See *Chapter 10: The Title Editor* for details about editing the properties of titles.

## Editing photos and graphics

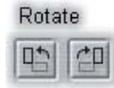
The *Clip properties* tool for editing bitmapped images allows you to perform several important image-processing tasks:

- Zoom in on your pictures and photos in order to crop away unneeded material and focus on only the essential part of the image;
- Rotate the image in 90-degree increments to permit the use of photos taken in “portrait” mode;
- Remove the “red-eye” effect that can occur when the subject of a photograph looks directly into the camera when the flash goes off;
- In Studio Plus, put together “pan-and-zoom” animations in which a high-resolution image is viewed as a succession of smoothly-connected close-ups at various degrees of magnification. This technique is closely associated with the well-known documentary filmmaker Ken Burns.



*The Clip properties tool for photos has pan-and-zoom controls for focusing on an area of interest. In Studio Plus, pan-and-zoom can be animated to create the effect of traversing the image from one focus to another. Animated pan-and-zoom can be obtained in other versions by upgrading to Studio Plus.*

**If an image needs rotating** by 90 degrees to bring it into “landscape” mode (wider than high), start by clicking one of the *image rotation* buttons. If needed, click the button more than once until the clip is properly oriented.



**If you want to reframe the image**, click directly on the tool’s preview window and, while holding the left mouse-button down, drag the image in any direction until it is properly positioned. Release the button to complete the operation. Next, use the *Zoom* slider to magnify or reduce the image size as desired. Adjust the position and magnification with these controls until the image is cropped and framed to your satisfaction.

The *Reset* button removes all your position and zoom changes, restoring the original framing of the image.

**The red-eye reduction feature** helps restore a natural appearance to photos in which the subject’s eyes are tinged with red.



(This problem is caused by light from the flash unit bouncing off the retina of the eye when the subject is looking directly into the camera.)

To activate red-eye reduction, click the left button in the *red eye* group. The button stays down when clicked. Now click the image preview with the left mouse-button above and to the left of the area in which red-eye reduction should be applied. While holding the button down, drag down and to the right until the area is fully enclosed. When you release the mouse-button, the red-eye reduction effect is instantly applied within the rectangle you have outlined.

It is usually not necessary to be highly precise when marking out the red-eye reduction area. In fact, a larger rectangle may even yield a better result than a smaller one that encloses the eyes and no more. If the red-eye reduction does not clear up the problem entirely on the first attempt, try again with a different rectangle size.

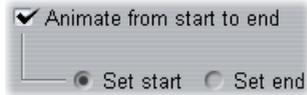
Studio's red-eye reduction algorithm provides excellent results with a wide variety of photos. However, some photos are better-suited to the process than others.

**To remove red-eye reduction** once applied, click the right-hand button in the *red eye* group.

## **Animating Pan-and-zoom in Studio Plus**

If you own Studio Plus, or purchase an activation key by clicking the *activate* button on the pan-and-zoom controls, you can create effective animations from your photos and graphic images. Use the highest-resolution images available with this technique, since they allow greater magnification levels before there is perceptible loss of quality.

Start creating a pan-and-zoom animation by clicking the *Animate from start to end* checkbox to activate the animation feature for the current clip. This enables the *Set start* and *Set end* radio buttons, with *Set start* initially selected.



Use the pan-and-zoom controls to set the framing you want to see at the start of the clip. Finally, click the *Set end* button, then use the controls to set up the framing you want for the end of the clip.

When the clip is played back, Studio will generate the intervening frames to connect your start and end views in a smooth animation.

The procedure above describes the simplest form of pan-and-zoom animation. Effective uses include:

- Moving from a full-frame photograph to a detail view of a person or thing somewhere in the image. This gives a similar result to zooming in while shooting video.

This might be used to prepare the viewer for a sequence of shots exploring the same close-up subject in multiple views, or providing further close-ups of different parts of the same scene.

- Moving out from a detail to the full-frame view, as though zooming out with the video camera. In the above scenario, this returns the viewer to the original context, perhaps closing a chapter or episode within your movie.
- Panning across a wide scene to absorb its details one by one. This technique can be used to impart a sense of discovery when a dramatic or humorous detail finally comes into view.

## Complex pan-and-zoom animations

When you apply pan-and-zoom to a number of copies of the same image in succession, it is as though you are taking your viewer on a guided tour. In effect you are telling a story, one that gradually unfolds as you draw attention to one detail after another.

Story-telling may be difficult or not, but implementing your story in Studio is very simple. Once you have set up the first clip, with the first pan-and-zoom “camera move”, simply copy it as often as necessary, and change the *end* setting for each clip.



*The pan-and-zoom controls are used here to focus in turn on four vignettes in the satirical painting “An Election Entertainment” by English artist William Hogarth. A fifth view pulls back to show as much of the entire canvas as will fit in a wide-screen frame without black sidebars. The tool automatically generates smooth motion from one view to the next, panning and zooming simultaneously as needed.*

You almost always want the start framing of a new clip in the sequence to match the end framing of the previous clip, in order that the sequence of moves will be smoothly connected. On the second clip, and all those that follow, click the *Match previous clip* button wherever you want continuity.

In order to allow the movie to dwell on each detail for a while after you pan to it, insert a non-animated copy of the image between each move. Connect these static clips into the sequence as usual with the *Match previous clip* button.

## **Animating pan-and-zoom with keyframes**

Studio Plus users have another option for animating their pan-and-zoom productions: keyframing. The use of this feature enables a string of pan-and-zoom movements to be associated with a single clip, instead of having a single movement on each of a series of clips. See “Keyframing” on page 103.

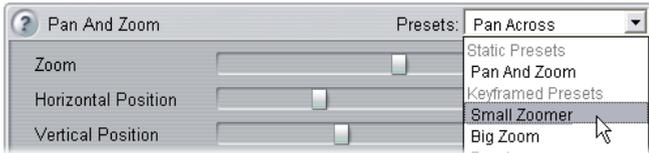
## **The pan-and-zoom effect interface**

As an alternative to pan-and-zoom with the *Clip properties* tool, you can enter the framing properties numerically with the *Pan and zoom* video effect. This alternative interface is provided by the *Video effects* tool. You can also combine the two methods, using the tool’s graphical interface to specify the initial settings, then fine tuning them with the numerical effect parameters.

**Tip:** Studio Plus users can use keyframing to create *Pan and zoom* slideshows using the effect parameters.

The *Pan and zoom* effect is found in the Fun Effects group. The parameters for pan-and-zoom are parallel to those offered by the tool interface: you can use the

sliders to set *Zoom*, *Horizontal position* and *Vertical position*. The “red-eye reduction” controls of the tool interface do not have equivalent parameters, however.



*Parameter settings for the Pan-and-zoom effect.*



## THE FRAME GRABBER

The Frame Grabber can capture a still image from any video capture source supported by Studio, or extract a single frame from any video clip in your current project. The grabbed frame can be added directly to your movie or saved out to disk in any of a number of standard graphics formats.

Once you have saved a grabbed frame to disk, you can:

- Use it in other software applications.
- Manipulate it in image-editing software.
- Import it back into your movies as a still image via the Album or the Title Editor.

---

### The Frame grabber tool

---

Use the *Frame grabber* tool in conjunction with the Player. To access it, open the Toolbox and click the *Frame grabber* button.



Play the movie or source video until the frame you want is displayed in the Player, then click the *Grab* button. The grabbed frame appears in the tool's preview area, ready to be added to your movie or saved as a file on disk.



*The Frame grabber in grab-from-movie mode. When you grab from an external source (e.g. a camcorder), the Camcorder Controller is displayed. With DV equipment, you can navigate the source tape from within the tool.*

**Grab from:** Select a source for the frame grabber by clicking either the *Movie* or the *Camcorder* button at the top of the tool. Choosing *Camcorder* means that the frame grabber will use your current video source, as configured in the *Capture source* options panel (page 246) and the *Capture format* options panel (page 250).

**Note:** Grabbing a frame from the camcorder is not supported for HDV equipment.

**Transport controls:** If your source video is a digital camcorder or VCR connected to a 1394 port, Studio provides convenient on-screen transport controls for locating the frame you wish to grab. For a description of these controls see “The Camcorder Controller” on page 22.

**Reduce flicker:** If the source video of the frame grab contains a large amount of motion, the grabbed frame may show flickering, which can be reduced or eliminated by checking the *Reduce flicker* option. Because *Reduce flicker* also reduces resolution somewhat, you should not use the option if the overall result is undesirable for a particular image.

**Grab:** Click the *Grab* button when you have located the frame you want to grab in the Player and configured the *Reduce flicker* option. The grabbed frame is displayed in the tool's preview area, and the two output buttons (*Add to Movie* and *Save to Disk*) are enabled.

**Add to movie:** This button inserts the grabbed frame into the Movie Window *video* track ahead of the currently-selected clip.

**Save to disk:** This button opens a Save As dialog so that you can select a folder, file name and image format for the file in which the grabbed frame will be stored. The dialog also provides controls that let you set the resolution of the saved image to any of several standard sizes, to the original size of the grabbed frame, or to a custom size that you enter.

If the “aspect ratio” (the ratio of the width to the height) of the size you choose is different from that of the grabbed frame, the image is stretched as necessary. This can introduce visible distortion of shapes; for instance, people may appear either unnaturally thin or unnaturally squat.



# Disc menus

With the advent of the DVD, VCD and S-VCD disc formats, video has become an *interactive* medium, with new possibilities for both videographer and audience.

Developing – “authoring” – a disc in one of these formats means going beyond the old idea of creating a movie to be viewed in strict sequence from beginning to end. Now the audience can decide which parts of the movie to view, and in what order.

The essential new feature that makes disc authoring possible is the *menu*. A particular disc may have one, a few or many menus, each consisting of a still image or short video sequence. Areas within the menus, called *buttons*, can be selected by the viewer to activate *links* to other content on the disc. Activating a link causes an immediate transfer to any of:

- A normal video sequence, which in this context is called a “chapter”. Chapter buttons often show a thumbnail frame from the video to which they link.
- Another page of the same menu. Multiple pages, with the same page design but different chapter buttons, are used when a menu has too many buttons to fit on a single page.
- A different menu.

Unlike any other kind of clip, menus automatically *loop*. When the end of a menu clip is reached during disc preview or playback, it is immediately restarted. This produces a jump in the playback position affecting all clips that run simultaneously with the menu, regardless of type – video (if the menu is an overlay), audio or still image.



The following diagram is patterned after the Movie Window storyboard. It shows how the menu pictured above, which appears in the diagram as *M1*, might fit into the overall scheme of a simple movie with two menus.



Each menu is followed in the movie by several chapters, all but one consisting of a single clip. Our

menu, *M1*, has links to five chapters. Our menu is designed to display two chapter links per page, so three pages are required to accommodate all the links. (The second page is the one appearing in the illustration.) We've also given each page a link to the *M2* menu.

The simple layout of this short movie can easily be extended to organize large numbers of clips. Much more complex movies are also constructed from the same elements: multi-page menus with links to chapters and to other menus.

<b>Availability:</b> Discs with multiple menus are supported in Studio Plus only.
---

---

## Disc authoring in Studio

---

For the purposes of editing in Studio, a disc menu is just one more type of clip. As with titles, you can use or adapt the menus provided in the Album, or construct your own from scratch in the Title Editor (see *Chapter 3: The Album* and *Chapter 10: The Title Editor*).

To get a feeling for what is involved, try creating the pair of “instant” projects described below. You don't have to go as far as making discs, but you can preview your movie using the DVD playback controls on the Player (see “The DVD Player Control” on page 171).

**Instant video scene catalog:** In an empty project, multi-select a good number of scenes from the Album and drag them onto the *video* track. Now switch to the Disc Menu section of the Album (the bottom tab) and

drag any of the menus to the beginning of the Timeline. When Studio asks if you would like it to “create chapters at the start of each video clip”, click *Yes* (see “Using menus from the Album” on page 169). A new track appears at the top of the Timeline, and a small “flag” appears over each of your clips. These represent links from the menu you just added. And that’s it – sit back and watch the show.

**Instant slideshow:** This time, start in the Still Images section of the Album. Drag as many images as you like onto the *video* track of an empty project, then drag in any disc menu as the first clip on the Timeline, and again click *Yes* when asked if you want links automatically created. Turn next to the Transitions section of the Album, pick any transition, and drag it between the menu and the first of your still images. Finally, select *all* of the still images (click the first, then shift-click the last), click with the right mouse button, and choose *Ripple Transition* from the pop-up menu. Instant slideshow!

## Menus and titles

The similarity noted on page 167 between titles and disc menus is not just on the surface: a menu is essentially “a title with buttons”. In fact, any still image type can be used as the basis for creating a menu within the Title Editor.

Like titles, menus can be used either in full-screen mode on the *video* track or as overlays on the *title* track. When a menu is used as an overlay, its background image is suppressed: only buttons, captions and graphics are displayed. This allows the menu to have a moving video background.

---

## Using menus from the Album

---



The Disc Menus section of the Album contains a collection of menus that have been designed for particular occasions, authoring styles and chapter counts. Each menu provides a background picture, a title, a set of chapter buttons (generally with spaces for thumbnail frames), and a pair of *Next page* and *Previous page* buttons.

The number of chapter buttons per page varies from one menu design to another, so one criterion for selecting a menu is the number of clips you want it to handle. It is generally more convenient for the viewer to browse a few menu pages with many buttons per page than many pages of a few buttons each.

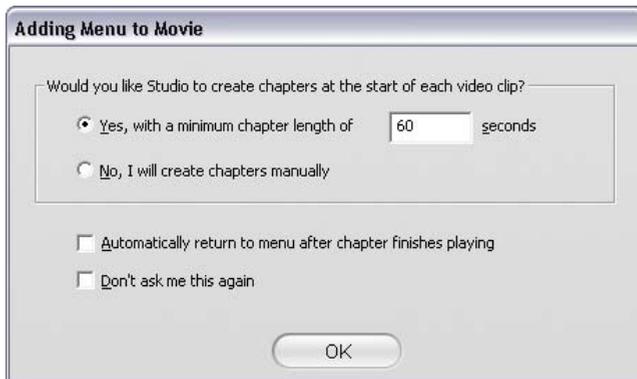
During editing, you see all the buttons that the menu provides. During playback, the only buttons visible are those to which you have assigned links.

Menus with fewer buttons have more space for captions; those with many buttons will have abbreviated captions or none at all. Whether you need captions, and if so whether they should be simple (“Chapter 1”) or descriptive (“Cutting the cake”) is a matter of your authoring style and the content of your movie.

In the VCD and S-VCD formats, the viewer must select chapters numerically (by keying numbers on the remote control), so it is usual to provide button captions that include the chapter number when authoring for these formats.

## Dropping menus on the Timeline

When you drag a menu from the Album and drop it onto the *video* track or the *title* track, Studio gives you the option of automatically generating links to all video clips to the right of the menu on the Timeline. Multiple clips are combined into chapters if necessary to achieve the minimum chapter length you specify.



This is the quickest, easiest way to link in a disc menu, but may not be what you want in a particular authoring situation. If you check the *Don't ask me again* checkbox, your choice of *Yes* or *No* becomes the default action when you drag in a menu in future. You can also set the default action, or reinstate the confirmation window, in the *When adding a disc menu* area of the *Project preferences* options panel (see "Project preferences" on page 253).

To create your chapter links manually, rather than using the automatic linking feature, use the *Set disc chapter* command on the pop-up context menu for each video clip you want to add, or use the *Set chapter* button on the *Clip properties* tool for disc menus.

---

## The DVD Player Control

---

   Studio's Player provides a specialized set of controls for previewing movies that contain menus, patterned after the button layout on a typical DVD remote control. Switch the Player to DVD mode by clicking the *DVD toggle* button at the bottom right corner of the Player.

A grouping of DVD controls appears and activates below the Player preview screen:



Here are the functions of the individual DVD controls:

**Main menu:** Jumps to the first menu in your  movie and begins (or continues) playing.

**Previous menu:** Jumps to the most recently  active menu and begins (or continues) playing. Clicking the button again jumps back from the menu to the most recent clip.

**Previous chapter, Next chapter:** Clicking the  *Previous chapter* button takes you to the start of  the current chapter if you aren't there already. Click again to move on to the previous chapter. The *Next chapter* button takes you forward to the next chapter in the movie. Within a menu, these buttons step

backwards and forwards respectively through the menu pages.

**Button selection:** The four arrow controls in this cluster move the on-screen cursor within a disc menu to select one of its buttons. The oval button in the middle of the cluster activates the currently-selected on-screen button, which is indicated by highlighting.



## Activating menu buttons directly

One feature of the Player that set-top DVDs don't have is the ability to click the buttons directly on the screen. Whenever a button is visible in the Player preview area in DVD mode, you can click it to follow the button link.

---

## Editing menus on the Timeline

---

Menus can be trimmed on the Timeline just like any other still image clip (see “Trimming on the Timeline using handles” on page 81).

Setting the clip duration is generally less crucial for menu clips than for other types, since menus cycle during playback while waiting for user input. If you want a looping video background or looping audio with your menus, though, you will want to match the menu's duration to that of the clips involved.

## The *menu* track



 Menu buttons link to particular points within your movie. Those points are marked by flags on the *menu* track, which materializes above the *video* track the first time a menu is added to your movie (and vanishes again if all menus are removed).

The menu itself is marked by a colored rectangle in the *menu* track (*M1* and *M2* in the illustration above). Each link to a chapter is shown by a “C” flag. Here is a close-up of the first part of the Timescale, showing the rectangle identifying the first menu, and the chapter flags for three of the clips it links to.



The next part of the Timescale in the overview illustration above includes the fourth chapter link from *M1*, and a link (the left-pointing arrow) from the end of the previous clip back to the menu. A result of setting this link is that the *C4* clip can only be reached from the menu. The *C4* clip is followed by menu *M2*, which – along with the flags that belong to it – is automatically drawn in a new color.



**Availability:** Multiple-menu discs are supported in Studio Plus only.

## Editing on the *menu* track

Flags on the *menu* track can be moved by dragging them with the mouse, thereby changing the location at which the link takes effect in the movie. When a video clip is moved, any flags attached to the clip are moved along with it.

### To create a link:

Right-click the *menu* track or the *video* track and choose either *Set Disc Chapter* or *Set Return to Menu*, depending on the kind of link you want to create.

*Return to menu* links are always created at the end of the current clip, rather than at the exact point where you click. You'll rarely want to return from the middle of a clip, but you can drag the link flag to a new position if the occasion arises.

### To reposition a link:

Click the flag for the link and drag it along the *menu* track to its new position.

### To delete a link:

- Right-click the link flag and choose *Delete* from the pop-up menu; or,
- Select the flag, highlighting it, then press the Delete key.

---

## Editing with the *Clip properties* tool

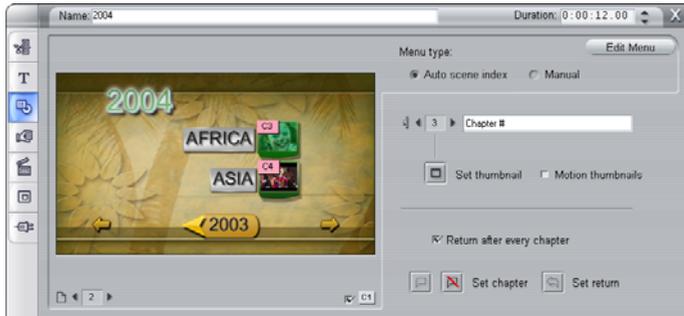
---

The *Clip properties* tool for disc menus allows you to create, edit and fine-tune chapter links,



and provides access to the Title Editor for adjusting the visual content of the menu.

Like the *Clip properties* tool for other clip types, this tool lets you set a custom name for the menu by editing the *Name* field and trim the clip by editing the *Duration* field.



The *Edit menu* button at the top right of the tool opens the menu in the Title Editor. There you can change every visual aspect of the menu: its background and button images, the appearance and contents of its captions, and more. For full information about the many capabilities of the Title Editor, see *Chapter 10: The Title Editor*.

The preview area on the left side of the tool shows how the menu looks and also has interactive features you can use when establishing chapter links. (These are described on page 178 under “Chapter-editing controls”.)

The other controls are in four groups:

- Menu-previewing controls
- The *Menu type* options
- Link property controls
- Chapter-editing controls

## Menu-previewing controls

These controls are located below the preview area.

**Page selector:** For menus with multiple pages (those with more links than fit on a single page) the arrow buttons let you select which page is active in the preview area. You can select any page in the menu for which links have been defined.



Alternative methods of selecting menu pages:

- Step through the pages by clicking the page link buttons in the preview area.
- Use the *Button selector* control (described on page 177) to choose a button on any page of the menu.

**Show link numbers checkbox:** Check this box to cause link numbers to be displayed in the preview area over every button in the menu. The link numbers match the format and color of the chapter flags on the *menu* track.



## The *Menu type* options

This pair of options determines whether you or Studio will organize the chapter links for this menu.



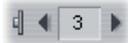
If you choose *Auto scene index*, Studio will ensure that your chapter links are in the same order on the menu as they are in the movie itself, even if you shuffle the order of the clips in the Movie Window. With the *Manual* setting, the order in which chapters are shown on the menu is up to you.

**Tip:** If you want to sort your chapter links yet still retain future control of their order, you can click *Auto scene index* first (to sort the links), then *Manual*.

## Link property controls

The controls in this area set the display properties of the chapter links on the menu.

**Button selector:** Every link button in your menu, no matter which page it is on, has a unique sequence number. Use the arrow buttons on this control to select the menu button you want to work on. The selected button is highlighted in the preview area. You can also select a button by clicking on it in the preview area.



**Button caption text field:** Edit the text for the current button without going to the Title Editor. The “#” character in button captions has a special meaning: Studio replaces it with the button’s sequence number. Use this feature to ensure that your buttons are correctly numbered regardless of changes in the layout of the menu. To edit other characteristics of a button caption – its position, font, and styling – click the *Edit menu* button to invoke the Title Editor.



**Set thumbnail button:** By default, the thumbnail frame displayed on a menu button is the frame to which the button links. You can choose any frame in your movie to be the thumbnail, however. Just move the Timeline scrubber to the exact frame you want (as shown in the Player), and click the *set thumbnail* button.



**Motion thumbnails checkbox:** Check this option if you would like your menu’s buttons to show moving video from their target chapters rather than a static thumbnail frame. Because this feature requires that the moving thumbnails be pre-



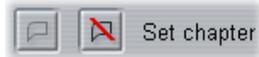
rendered, the results won't appear immediately when you preview your movie in the Player. Instead you will typically see a colored bar appear in the Timescale over the menu clip. This bar indicates that the clip is being rendered in the background, without interrupting your session.

Background rendering is optional. You can disable it, if required, in the *Video and audio preferences* options panel (*Setup* ➤ *Video and Audio Preferences*). See page 253 for more information.

## Chapter-editing controls

The controls in this area select or modify the individual chapter buttons within a menu.

**The *Set chapter* buttons:** These buttons set or sever the link between the currently-selected chapter button on the menu and its target clip.



**To set a link:** Position the Timeline scrubber within a menu, video or still image clip, and click the *Create chapter*  button. For video and still image clips, the chapter point is set to the exact location of the scrubber within the clip.

**To clear a link:** Click the *Delete chapter*  button.

***Set return* button:** This creates a “return-to-menu” link at the end of the current clip, which is where you almost always want it. During playback, the link causes an immediate jump to its menu. To create a return-to-menu link in the *Clip properties* tool, position the Timeline scrubber in the clip where you want the link, and click *Set return to menu*.



**The *Return after every chapter* checkbox:** Set this option to add a return-to-menu link after every chapter in this menu. Clearing the checkbox removes all the return-to-menu links for this menu, whether they were added manually or automatically.

## Creating links with drag-and-drop

The *Clip properties* tool for disc menus supports drag-and-drop as a quick and convenient way to establish links for menu buttons.

### To create a link using drag-and-drop:

- Click the clip in the Movie Window that you want to link to, and drag it onto a button in the *Clip properties* tool preview area. The button is linked to the first frame of the clip. Or,
- Click the button for which you want to create a link, and drag it onto a clip in the Movie Window. In this case you are linking to the point within the clip at which you “drop” the button – generally *not* the first frame.

---

## The *Disc menu* tool

---

If you open this tool while a menu is selected, it is equivalent to opening the *Clip properties* tool; otherwise, it provides a *Create Menu* button that takes you into the Title Editor to begin the process of creating a new disc menu.



Because developing a menu is a relatively intricate operation, Studio takes the opportunity to remind you that pre-built menus are available in the Album.



When you decide that this reminder is no longer needed, check the *Don't ask me this again* box before clicking the *OK* button.

## CHAPTER 10:

# The Title Editor

Studio's built-in Title Editor is a powerful facility for creating and editing titles and other graphics. Its battery of text and image effects and tools provides endless possibilities for the visual design of your movie.

The Title Editor is not limited to creating passive titles. For disc projects, you can also add and edit the special buttons needed for handling viewer interaction with the menus of VCD, S-VCD and DVD movies.



*Creating a title in the Studio Title Editor tool. The large area containing the picture and the text is the Edit Window, while the panel occupying most of the right-hand side is the Title Editor Album. Other controls are in clusters around the Edit Window.*

---

## Launching the Title Editor

---

Reflecting the versatility of the Title Editor is the variety of ways of accessing it from Studio's Edit mode, using either one of the tools in the Video toolbox (see page 69) or a mouse command on one of the Timeline tracks (see page 63).

- **To create a full-screen title or menu:** Select *Go to Title/Menu Editor* from the right-button context menu in the Timeline *video* track.
- **To create an overlay title or menu:** Double-click the Timeline *title* track.
- **To create a title or menu from the toolbox:** Open the *Create title* tool and click *Title Overlay* or *Full Screen Title*.
- **To edit a full-screen title:** Double-click the title in any Movie Window view, or right-click the title and select *Go to Title/Menu Editor*.
- **To edit a full-screen menu:** Double-click the menu in any view and click the *Edit Menu* button, or right-click the menu and select *Go to Title/Menu Editor*.
- **To edit an overlay title or menu:** Double-click the clip on the *title* track or in List View, or right-click it in any view and select *Go to Title/Menu Editor*.
- **To edit a title or menu from the toolbox:** With the clip open in the *Clip properties* tool, click the *Edit Menu* or the *Edit Title* button.

If the list seems overwhelming, don't let it concern you. In practice, getting to the Title Editor by the

nearest available means will give the result you want. If you do accidentally create an overlay when you want a full-screen title or menu, or vice versa, just drag it onto the other Timeline track. If you find yourself creating a title when you wanted a disc menu, you can easily switch over in the Title Editor.



## THE TITLE EDITOR CONTROLS

The main Title Editor controls are laid out in clusters around the Edit Window (see the picture on page 181).

---

### Title-type buttons

---



The four buttons in this cluster sit on the left side of the screen above the Title Editor's Edit Window. Only one of them can be selected at a time. Choose the first button if you are creating a still title. The second creates a *roll*, in which the title text and graphics travel upwards on the screen as the title displays, like the credits at the end of a move. The third creates a *crawl*, in which the title is displayed as a single line of text moving from right to left across the screen like the bulletins on a TV news show.

**Availability:** Rolls and crawls are supported in Studio Plus only.

The fourth button is for creating *disc menus*, which you can usefully think of as “titles with buttons”. In fact, a menu is just like any other title except for two attributes:

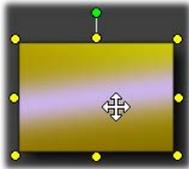
- A menu has at least one button. A title has none. Adding a button to a title turns it into a menu, and deleting the last button on a menu turns it into a title. By the same token, if you click the *Menu* button while editing a title, Studio automatically adds a button to the title.
- A menu cannot have rolling or crawling text. The Title Editor does not allow you to add menu buttons to a rolled or crawled title.

---

## Object toolbox

---

☞ T ○ □ This cluster of four Title Editor tool buttons is located at left below the Edit Window.



The first tool (the arrow) is used for all editing operations upon the *currently selected object*. A selected object is surrounded by a number of *control points* with which you can change its size, position, proportions, and other geometrical features.

The other three tools are for creating objects in the Edit Window – text boxes, ellipses and rectangles.



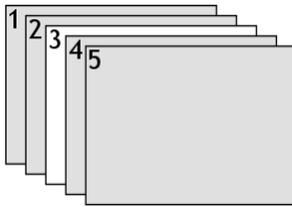
Each is used in the same general way. Click one of the three tools, then click the Edit Window at the point where one corner of the object should be. Drag the mouse to outline the new object as indicated by the dotted line.

When the object has the size and proportions you want, release the mouse. Whatever its type, the object is created with the specified dimensions. Its other attributes – color, shading, shadow, etc. – are determined by the currently selected *look* in the Title Editor Album. All attributes can later be changed at will.



After the object is created, the object tool you used deselects, and the selection arrow again becomes active. The object itself is selected – shown in the usual way by its control points – and can now be manipulated with the mouse.

### Reordering objects in three dimensions



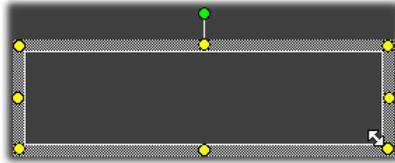
Because objects can overlap one another, it is easy to get into situations where an object that should be completely visible is partly or wholly obscured by one or more other

objects. In such cases, use the four reordering commands on the Title Editor’s *Layers* menu. These commands affect the currently-selected object, symbolized by rectangle “3” in the diagram.

- **Bring to Front:** The object is moved out in front of all other objects. In the diagram, object 3 is now in front of object 1.
- **Send to Back:** The object moves behind all other objects. Object 3 is now behind object 5.
- **Bring Forward One Layer:** Object 3 now lies in front of objects 2, 4 and 5, but still behind object 1.
- **Send Back One Layer:** Object 3 is now behind objects 1, 2 and 4, but is still in front of object 5.

## About text objects

Selecting a text object is different in one important way from selecting a rectangle or ellipse: the object's *text field* is put into a "ready" state in which any keyboard activity will cause the field to activate and start displaying the input text.



The activation of the text field is indicated by a text insertion cursor, the changed appearance of the object frame, and the disappearance of the control points.



When a text object is *not* selected, you can activate its text field directly by clicking in the middle of the object. If you want the selection frame and control points to appear, you must click on the edges of the object. With other types of object, you can click anywhere in an object to select it.

To deactivate a text field, click anywhere in the Edit Window outside the text object.

Because text plays a central role in most titles and menus, the Text Editor will automatically create and activate a text object in the center of the Edit Window if you simply begin typing at a time when no text object already exists.

## Advanced text editing features

As in a word processing program, the Title Editor allows you to format a selected range of characters. Simply mark an adjacent set of characters with the mouse and apply the formatting you desire.

Supported operations on character ranges include text styling (font, style and look), clipboard operations (cut, copy, paste), delete, and a number of special positioning, spacing and scaling commands that are accessible only from the keyboard. For details on these, please consult *Appendix G: Keyboard Shortcuts*.

---

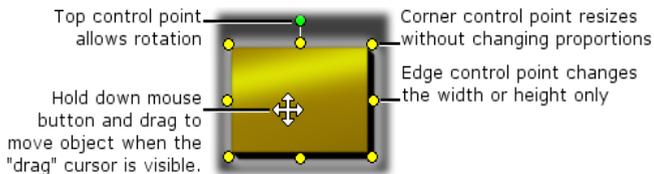
## Editing-mode selection buttons

---

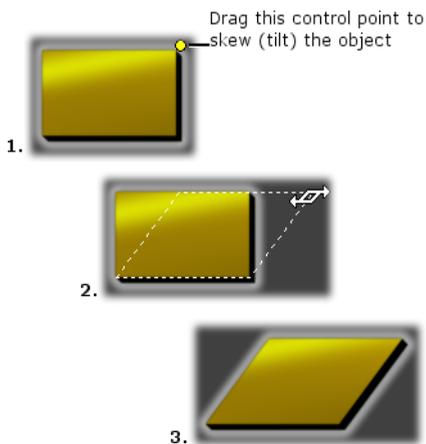


These two buttons form the second cluster along the bottom of the Title Editor's Edit Window. Their function is to govern which of two sets of editing operations is available for the currently-selected object.

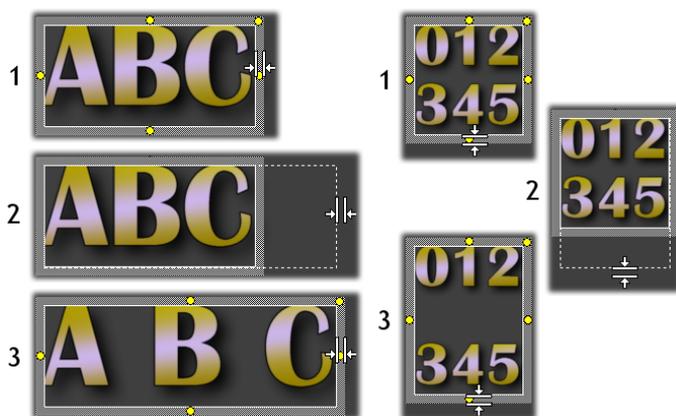
- The first button is on by default when an object is newly created. It enables the *move*, *scale* and *rotate* operations with a selection frame containing nine control points:



- Clicking the second button enables the *skew* operation, which requires only a single control point.



With text objects, the second button provides two further operations, *kern* and *change leading*, accessed by control points in the center of each edge of the text frame:

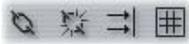


*Kern (L) and Change leading (R)*

---

## Object layout buttons

---



The two left buttons in this cluster are for grouping and ungrouping Title Editor objects. The first button is available when multiple objects are selected. Its action is to link the objects into a *group* – a composite object that is treated as a single entity by editing operations. When a group is selected, all its control points are visible simultaneously, and any of them may be used to manipulate the group.



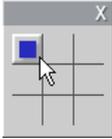
*A grouping of three objects*

The second button, which is available whenever a group object is selected, separates the group into its constituent objects.

Although it is possible to “group groups”, grouping is always just one level deep, so ungrouping a supergroup will result in all the constituent objects being individuals again.

The next button opens a pop-out menu of 11 operations that apply *only* to groups. The first six let you align a set of objects along any one of their four edges or either of their two mid-lines. The next pair of commands provides for spacing the objects at equal intervals in

either the vertical or horizontal directions, and the final three resize the objects so that they have equal width, equal height, or both. All of these commands are particularly useful in menu creation, since you generally want menu buttons to be laid out in a regular fashion.



The final object layout button opens another pop-out menu, this one concerned with *object justification*. The nine options here are in a graphical form resembling a tic-tac-toe board. Clicking one of the nine areas moves the object to the corresponding corner of the screen (as defined by the “text-safe” area delimited by red dashed lines), or to the center.

## Multiple selection of objects

The first step in making a group is to select the multiple objects that will comprise it. This can be accomplished in either of two ways:

- By clicking and dragging with the mouse to mark out a selection rectangle (a “marquee”) that encloses all the objects you want to group; or,
- By clicking the first object you want to group, then Ctrl-clicking each of the others.

## Temporary groups

Any selection of multiple objects functions as a temporary group, and can be moved, aligned, rotated, colored etc. as a unit. The temporary grouping loses its identity as soon as you click elsewhere in the Edit Window, however, whereas a group created with the *group* button persists until explicitly ungrouped.

---

## Clipboard and delete buttons

---



The buttons in this cluster provide the familiar editing operations *Cut*, *Copy*, *Paste* and *Delete*, all of which operate on groups, individual objects, or on selected text within a Title Editor text object. The first three work with the Windows Clipboard, while the fourth simply deletes the chosen material without affecting the Clipboard.

---

## Text-styling controls

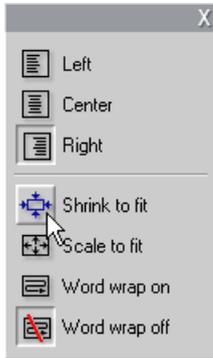
---



The controls in this cluster at the top right of the Title Editor's Edit Window should look familiar to anyone who has used word-processing software. The controls apply both to currently-selected text and to any new text that may be entered until the settings are changed again.

At the left are three *font style* buttons, which select the bold, italic or underlined styles respectively.

Perhaps surprisingly, the *underlined style* button – alone among these controls – can be applied to *any* type of object, not just text (try it!). This makes it possible to use the underlined highlighting style with buttons created from graphic objects: rectangles, ellipses and pictures.



The fourth button opens a pop-out menu of *text-formatting* options. Unlike the other controls in the cluster, which govern the appearance of individual characters, the options on this menu apply to all the text in a given *text box*.

The three justification options – *Left*, *Center* and *Right* – affect the placement of the text within its box (and not the placement of the box itself within the Edit Window, which is the function of the *object justification* menu ).

*Shrink to fit*, *Scale to fit*, *Word wrap on* and *Word wrap off* are options that determine how your text is treated when you resize a text box. With *Word wrap on*, which is the default for a new text box, resizing the box results in the text being reformatted – word-wrapped – to the new box width (while the resulting new height of the text in turn governs the height of the box). *Word wrap off* removes all “soft” line breaks (line breaks added for word wrapping), then makes the box as wide as necessary to contain the text. *Word wrap* mode is automatically turned on again if you type further characters into the text box.

With *Scale to fit*, the text is stretched during resizing to follow both box dimensions. With *Shrink to fit*, the text remains its original size unless the box is made smaller, in which case the text is resized as in *Scale to fit*. Neither *to fit* command changes the line divisions of the text.

The font dropdown list and the font-size selector complete the text-styling controls group.



## THE TITLE EDITOR ALBUM

The Title Editor Album is the rectangular panel on the right-hand side of the Title Editor screen. It contains resources for building menus and titles in the same way that the main Studio Album contains resources for creating movies.



The Title Editor Album is controlled by the four buttons shown at left, which are located between the Edit Window and the Album itself. Each button opens one of the four Album sections: the Looks Browser, the Backgrounds section, the Pictures section and the Buttons section.

---

### The Looks Browser

---



This section of the Title Editor Album has three subsections, accessed by the *Standard*, *Custom* and *Favorites* tabs across the top.

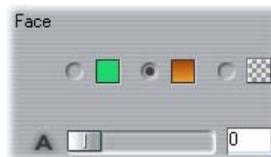
The *Standard* tab is a collection of styles that can be applied to the text and other objects you use in your titles. Each style consists of a color (or color gradient, or transparency) for each of the “face” (surface), edge and shadow of the object to which it applies, plus a separate blurring parameter for each. A final parameter is shadow direction, for which there are eight possibilities.

To change the look of an existing object, simply click on the look you want while the object is selected. New objects are created with the most recently selected look.



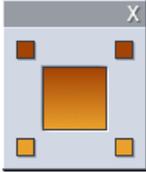
*Selecting a look in the Looks Browser: Each button in the Standard tab is available in eight styles, which are presented to you as a submenu. Each look has a numeric ID that displays as a tool-tip under your mouse. Above, the mouse is on look 27-3.*

The *Custom* tab lets you customize the supplied looks or create your own by adjusting the parameters listed above. Three identical sets of controls adjust the parameters for face, edge and shadow respectively. Here are the face controls:



The three option buttons across the top select a solid color, a gradient, or no color (transparency). Clicking

the color swatch beside the first button invokes an otherwise standard Windows color-picker dialog to which an *Opacity* slider (0-100%) has been added.



The swatch beside the second button pops up a gradient designer that lets you define a gradient by assigning the starting colors to each corner of a square surface. Click the color swatches in the corners of the gradient window to set the color for that corner in a color-picker dialog.

**Note:** Some of the more elaborate supplied looks employ special internal features and so cannot be edited.



The *Favorites* tab lets you save particular custom looks that you may want to re-use in the future, to spare you from having to remember or record the parameters you used. Click the left-hand button to save the current look as one of your favorites. Click the right-hand button to delete the currently-selected “favorite”.

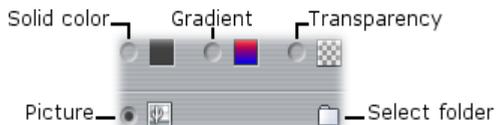
---

## The Backgrounds section

---



A title or menu can have four types of background: a solid color, a gradient, transparency (no background at all) or an image file (such as a drawing, photograph or saved video frame).



The *color* and *gradient* options in the Backgrounds section of the Title Editor work in just the same way as those described above for the Looks Browser (page 193), except that the color or gradient you select is instantly applied to the background of the title you are editing.

If you are working on an overlay title, you may find interesting ways to use the *Opacity* setting on the color-picker dialogs for these buttons, especially when the overlay is coupled with transitions. Normally, though, you'll use a transparent background for titles, and *transparency* is the default background selection for a new title or menu.

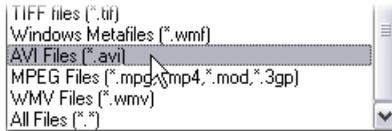
The final option for backgrounds is *picture* – an image file in any standard format. As with many of the sections of Studio's main Album, the backgrounds are drawn from a source folder that may be changed using the folder button. The image file you select with the folder button becomes the new background, and the image files in the folder are displayed as thumbnails on the Album panel.

If necessary, the Title Editor stretches the background image until it fills the width or height of screen but does not change its proportions.

## **Adding a motion background**

In Studio Plus, disc menus can have a background of moving video, not just a static image. To create such a *motion background*, or replace one, simply click the

folder button and browse for a movie file in AVI, MPEG or WMV format.



*To see movie files listed while browsing for a folder on your hard drive, select the desired movie type (or “All Files”) in the “Files of type” box.*

The following rules apply when you add or change a motion menu clip:

- The length of the movie you add as a background does not affect the length of the menu clip in the Movie Window. If the movie is shorter than the clip, it is simply repeated as necessary to fill out the required time; if longer, it is truncated. You can adjust the length of the menu by trimming on the timeline or in the *Clip properties* tool as usual.
- If you add a widescreen movie as a menu background in a project in standard format, or a standard movie to a widescreen project, the movie is stretched or squeezed as required to match the project format.

---

## The Pictures section

---



As with the background pictures just discussed, the images in the Pictures section of the Title Editor Album can be of any standard type. Instead of being stretched to fill the Edit Window, however, these pictures are added to the title as *picture objects* and

displayed at normal size with eight control points that allow them to be repositioned and resized (though not rotated or skewed).

Picture objects behave just like text objects and the two types of graphic object with respect to grouping, alignment and similar controls.

---

## The Buttons section

---



Since buttons are the magic ingredient that turns titles into interactive menus, this section of the Title Editor Album is mainly of interest for DVD, VCD and S-VCD authoring.

Broadly speaking, a button is an area of the screen with which the user can interact in some way. Buttons are classified according to the action they produce when the user activates them, and not by their appearance, which generally *should* be chosen to give a strong clue to their behavior, but is not required to. The four types of button are:

- **Normal:** Clicking the button causes playback to jump to a chapter (that is, ordinary video) or another menu. The link between the button and its target is created in the *Clip properties* tool, not in the Title Editor.
- **Thumbnail:** This special form of the *normal* button type displays a thumbnail frame (or a moving thumbnail preview) from the part of the movie to which it links.
- **Previous:** This button appears on the second and later pages of multi-page menus (menus with more

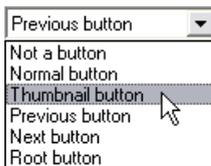
links from *normal* or *thumbnail* buttons than will fit on one page). It links to the previous menu page.

- **Next:** This button appears on all but the last page of multi-page menus; it links to the following page.

The button art supplied with Studio includes several examples of each type. Each button is an image file in Targa (**tga**) format. Examination of the files in an art program like Adobe PhotoShop or Paint Shop Pro will show that the transparent portion of the button image, and the special area for the display of thumbnails (where applicable), are defined by an alpha channel included with the image.

As usual, a *folder* button lets you select the disk directory from which the displayed images are obtained.

To use a supplied button, simply drag it from the Album into the Edit Window, where it becomes a button object – essentially an identical twin of the picture object.



The default action of the supplied buttons is determined by their file names, but a new action can be assigned to the currently-selected button object from the dropdown list

in the Buttons section of the Title Editor Album. The first choice on this list, “Not a button”, removes the action from the object – now it is merely a graphic. The other choices correspond to the button types listed above.

**Tip:** Remember, it’s not the button’s appearance that determines its behavior, but the button type you select from the menu.

## Button highlighting



DVD menus (but not VCD and S-VCD menus), give visual feedback by highlighting the current button as the user scrolls around the menu. Special active highlighting distinguishes a button that is in the process of being actuated, just before the action is performed. (You can preview this highlighting effect in the Player, and interact with the menu using either the mouse or the Player's DVD controls.)

The Title Editor lets you assign the color that will be used for each type of highlight, and a style option that governs how the highlights will be drawn. The controls for these settings are located below the *button-type* list.

Click the *Active* and *Selected* color swatches to set the highlight colors that work best with your menu. It may help to make your menus clearer if you use consistent highlighting colors for all the menus on a disc.

The three highlight style options, from left to right, are:

- **Box:** The highlighting is drawn as a rectangle enclosing the button.
- **Follow shape:** The highlighting covers the visible area of the button, whatever its shape.
- **Underline:** The button is underlined.

These highlight options can be applied to any type of button made from any type of object, not just the button images brought in from the Album. Clear the *Highlight style* checkbox if you want to disable button highlighting while working in the Title Editor.

# Sound effects and music

Video may be thought of as primarily a visual medium, but the role of sound in your movies is often no less important than that of the images on the screen.

Feature film and television productions include numerous types of audio, beginning with the dialog and other sounds created during live action. In your movies, that raw soundtrack is brought in along with the video during Capture mode. It appears in the Movie Window Timeline view on the *original audio* track below the *video* track. In Studio Plus, original audio may also appear on the *overlay audio* track.

Most commercial productions also require sound effects – slamming doors, crashing cars, barking dogs, etc. – and incidental music, which may consist of music created especially for the production, songs taken from recordings, or both. Voice-overs and other customized audio are also often needed.

You can use all these types of add-on sound in your own movies:

- A good starter set of effects in **wav** format is installed with Studio, and others are available from many sources.
- The *SmartSound* tool automatically creates a music track of any desired duration in a variety of styles.

- You can drop **mp3** files from the Album onto the Timeline or import audio or MP3 tracks from a CD with the *CD audio* tool.
- The *Voice-over* tool lets you add narration or commentary as you preview your edited video.

Audio, whatever its type, is added to your production as clips in the Movie Window. These can be moved around, trimmed and edited in much the same way as video clips and still images.

Once a sound clip is part of your movie, you can modify it with fades and other volume adjustments. You can adjust the positioning of your clips within a stereo or surround mix, and even change that positioning arbitrarily within the clip. You can also apply Studio's audio effects, including noise reduction and reverb among others.

**Availability:** Surround sound is supported in Studio Plus only.

## About surround sound

A “surround” mix goes beyond the two channels of stereo to provide a theater-style enveloping sound field for your DVD productions. Studio lets you set the apparent position of each audio track independently within the mix, and to “pan” the track (reposition it, whether smoothly or abruptly) in any desired direction as often as necessary over the course of your movie.

To preview surround sound while editing in Studio, you need a sound card that support 5.1 channel output.

**Note:** Even if you cannot hear your surround mix when previewing, it will still appear on your DVDs, but a surround preview allows more accurate mixing.

A surround soundtrack can be output to the DVD in either of two forms:

- In Dolby Digital 5.1 format, each of the six surround channels is stored discretely on the disc and will be routed directly to the corresponding speaker when played back on a full 5.1 surround playback system.
- In Dolby Digital 2.0 format, the surround mix is encoded onto two channels. When your DVD is played back on systems with a Pro Logic or Pro Logic 2 decoder, and a 5.1 or better speaker layout, the original surround information is recreated. On other systems, the encoded soundtrack will be heard as conventional stereo.

---

## The Timeline audio tracks

---

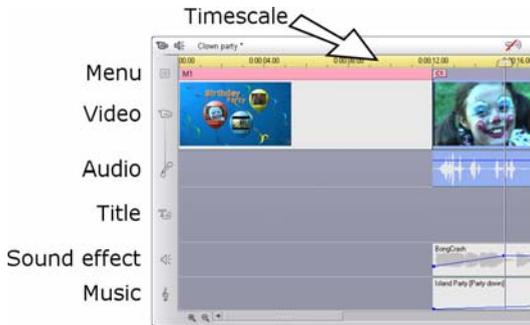
The Movie Window's Timeline view contains several audio tracks:

**Original audio track:** This contains the audio captured along with your video clips. It is sometimes called “synchronous” audio because it is recorded simultaneously with the *video* track.

**Overlay audio track:** The original audio for video clips on the *overlay* track.

**Sound effect and voice-over track:** Sound effects and voice-overs are the typical content on this track. Sound effects are brought into your project from the Sound Effects section of the Album (see “The Sound Effects section” on page 57). Voice-overs are created with the *Voice-over* tool (described on page 208).

**Background music track:** Use this track to include **mp3** or **wav** audio files, SmartSound background music generated by Studio, and music (or other content) from audio compact disks (CDs). Audio files are imported via the Music section of the Album (see page 58). Create SmartSound clips with the *SmartSound* tool, and CD audio clips with the *CD audio* tool (see “The *SmartSound* tool” on page 206 and “The *CD audio* tool” on page 205).



*The Timeline audio tracks: original audio, sound effect and voice-over, and background music. A fourth audio track appears when the overlay track is visible; it contains the original audio for video on that track.*

## Switching audio tracks

Although the audio tracks do have their specialized roles, as described above, these mainly control the choice of track where new clips will appear.

Original audio will always be placed on the *original audio* track when a new video clip is brought in; new voice-overs will always be created on the *sound effects and voice-overs* track; and new CD audio and SmartSound clips will be added to the *background music* track.

Once a clip has been created, however, you can move it to a different audio track if it is convenient to do so: each track is actually able to accommodate any type of audio clip. This gives you the flexibility to use two sound effects simultaneously, for example, simply by placing one of them on the *background music* track.

The only audio track with special status is *original audio*, either for the main *video* track or, when it's in use, the *overlay* track. By default, audio clips on this track are edited in parallel with the contents of the *video* track at the same time index. To treat the audio as a separate clip, lock the *video* track (by clicking the padlock icon on the right side of the Movie Window). See “Advanced Timeline editing” for details (page 90).

---

## The *CD audio* tool

---

Use this tool to create an audio clip from a CD track. You can preview tracks within the tool, and select either a whole track or an excerpt to add to your movie. 



If there is a CD in the drive that you have not previously used in a Studio project, Studio will ask you to enter its name before continuing. The controls on the

tool will become available only when Studio can offer at least one entry on the *CD Title* dropdown list.

Select the CD from which you wish to capture audio in the *CD Title* dropdown list, and a track on that CD from the *Track* list. Since *CD Title* is also an editable text field, you can change the name by which Studio refers to this CD, if desired. The name change applies to both the current and future sessions.

Having selected the CD and track, you can now optionally trim the clip and give it a custom name using the other controls on the tool. These controls are common to most audio clip types, and are used for editing as well as creating clips. They are covered in “Trimming with the *Clip properties* tool” (page 211).

Finally, click the *Add to Movie* button. Studio captures the music clip from the CD drive and adds it to the *background music* track beginning at the current time index (as shown by the Timeline scrubber and the preview frame in the Player).

---

## The *SmartSound* tool

---

SmartSound automatically creates background music in the *style* of your choice. Within that style, you select one of several *songs*, and within that song, any of a number of *versions*. The list of versions available also depends on the duration of background music you specify. 

To create music for a particular set of clips, select those clips before opening the *SmartSound* tool. (To select your whole movie, use *Edit* ➤ *Select All* or press Ctrl+A.) The total length of the selected clips will

determine the initial setting for the music duration, though you can modify the value at any time by trimming on the Timeline or directly editing the *Duration* counter in the tool.



In the *SmartSound* tool, choose a style, song and version from the lists provided. Each style offers its own selection of songs, and each song its own selection of versions. Use the *Preview* button to audition the song while the tool is open.

Enter a name for the clip in the *Name* field and adjust its duration with the *Duration* counter, if desired. The music clip you create will be adjusted to fit exactly the duration you select.

If you would rather work with *SmartSound* sound effects instead of songs, select *Sound effects* rather than *Music* on the *Type* dropdown list.

You can change the selection of songs available to you by choosing a different option on the *Scope* dropdown list. Choosing *All* will give you access to the entire *SmartSound* catalog, if you have an Internet connection. You can preview any of the songs, and purchase any that your movie may require.

When you have made your choice, click the *Add to Movie* button. *Studio* creates the new clip on the *background music* track beginning at the current time

index (as shown by the Timeline scrubber and the preview frame in the Player).

The *SmartSound* button at the bottom right of the tool opens a dialog with options and tools for maintaining your SmartSound library.

---

## The *Voice-over* tool

---

Recording a voice-over in Studio is as easy as making a telephone call. Just open the *Voice-over* tool, click *Record* and speak into the microphone. You can narrate as you watch the movie play so your words match the action on the screen. You can also use the tool as a quick way of capturing ambient music or home-made sound effects via your microphone.



Before you can record audio using the *Voice-over* tool, you need to connect a microphone to the input jack of your PC sound board. You must also have at least one video clip in the Movie Window.

Review the video scenes in your movie and decide where you want the voice-over to begin and end. When you are ready, open the *Voice-over* tool. Note that the recording lamp – the dark rectangle in the upper left of the above illustration – is not lit.

Select your starting point on the Movie Window Timeline. You may do this by selecting a clip, playing the movie and stopping it at the desired point, or by moving the Timeline scrubber.

Position the microphone for use and try speaking a test phrase to check your recording level (see “Voice-over level” below). When you are satisfied, click the *Record* button (which toggles to a *Stop* button). Wait for a few moments as the recording lamp first signals **STAND BY** then steps through a 3-2-1 countdown.



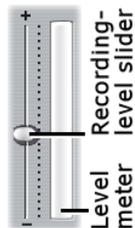
When the recording lamp signals **RECORDING**, and the movie begins to play back in the Player, perform your narration.



Finally, click the *Stop* button. The lamp goes out, and the voice-over clip is automatically placed on the *sound effects and voice-overs* track. Review the clip by selecting it then clicking the *Play* button.

## Voice-over level

The record level for a voice-over clip is set when you create the voice-over and cannot be changed thereafter. However, you can adjust the playback volume at any time. The record level is set with the *Recording level* slider and its accompanying level meter on the *Voice-over* tool.

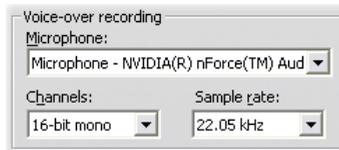


Watch this meter to make sure your recording levels don't get too high or low. The indicator changes color from blue (0-70% modulation), through yellow, to red. Generally, you should try to keep your audio peaking in the yellow (71-90%) and out of the red (91-100%).

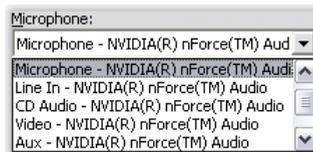
## Voice-over recording options

The Studio setup dialogs include several settings that affect your recording configuration and quality. This section provides a brief summary. See “Video and audio preferences” on page 257 for detailed information.

To access these options select *Setup* ➤ *Video and audio preferences* from the main menu bar.



The *Microphone* dropdown list on this dialog lists the multiple ways a microphone can be connected to your particular sound card. The entries on the list should look something like the following, from a system with an NVIDIA® sound card:



Choose from this list, then connect your microphone in the manner indicated (e.g. *Microphone* or *Line In*).

The *Channels* and *Sample rate* adjustments on the options dialog control the quality of voice-overs or other recorded audio. Set them at the highest quality level you anticipate needing, but keep in mind that increasing quality requires more disk space.



## TRIMMING AUDIO CLIPS

As with other clip types, you can trim audio clips either directly on the Timeline or by using the *Clip properties* tool. See “Trimming on the Timeline using handles” on page 81 for a discussion of the first method.

Most types of audio clip can be trimmed from a minimum of one frame up to the full original length of the clip content. SmartSound clips can be trimmed on the Timeline down to as little as one second, and upward without limit.

---

### Trimming with the *Clip properties* tool

---

The *Toolbox* ➤ *Modify Clip Properties* menu  command invokes the *Clip properties* tool for the selected clip. You can also access the tool by double-clicking any audio clip.

To begin with, the tool provides controls that let you view or edit two properties shared by all clips:

- To set the duration of the clip, change the value in the *Duration* counter.
- The *Name* text field lets you assign a custom name to the clip to replace the default one assigned by Studio. The clip name is used by the Movie Window’s List view, and can also be viewed as a fly-by label when your mouse hovers over the clip in the Storyboard view.

The other controls provided by the tool depend on the type of audio clip you give it.

## Original audio, sound effects and voice-overs

The *Clip properties* tool provides the same kind of trimming controls for sound-effect and voice-over clips as for video clips, but displays a graph of the audio waveform instead of visual preview areas.

To learn how to trim with these controls, see “Trimming with the *Clip properties* tool” on page 86.

Remember that clips on the *original audio* and the *overlay audio* tracks can only be edited independently when the corresponding video track is locked. See “Advanced Timeline editing” on page 90.



## CD Audio

For CD Audio clips, the *Clip properties* tool uses the same trimming controls as above, but additionally provides dropdown selectors for *CD Title* and *Track*. You can use these to change the source of the clip at any time. *CD Title* is also an editable text field, so you can enter the actual title of the CD.

## SmartSound®

SmartSound clips can be edited to almost any length, except that very short clips at some particular durations may not be available in every combination of Style and

Song. This tool is essentially identical to the tool for creating SmartSound clips (described under “The *SmartSound* tool” on page 206), except that the *Add to movie* button is replaced by the *Accept changes* button.



## AUDIO VOLUME AND MIXING

The audio levels and stereo positioning of individual clips can be adjusted either directly on the Timeline, or with the *Volume and balance* tool. Each technique offers its own advantages. Adjusting on the Timeline gives you a good sense of time versus volume or balance, whereas the *Volume and balance* tool facilitates *mixing* – separately adjusting the volume and stereo balance of each of the audio tracks.

For disc authoring, the *Volume and balance* tool lets you choose to create a surround soundtrack, rather than stereo. The tool lets you dynamically position any of the audio tracks from front to rear as well as left to right.

**Availability:** Surround sound is supported in Studio Plus only.

---

### Anatomy of an audio clip

---

An audio clip icon on the Timeline has several parts. The boundaries of each clip are denoted by vertical

bars. The actual content of the audio is indicated by a waveform graph:



*Waveform graph excerpt from three neighboring clips.*

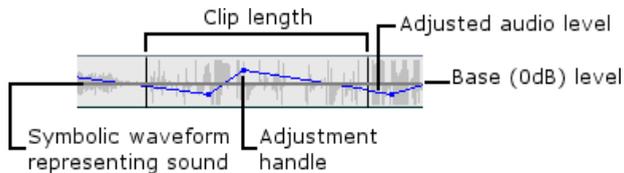
The appearance of the waveform graph tells you something about the character of the sound. A *quiet* sound has a narrow waveform, close to the centerline of the clip. A *loud* sound has a waveform with larger peaks and troughs, reaching almost to the borders of the clip. A *continuous* sound, such as a car engine, has many pulses packed closely together. A *staccato* sound has brief pulses separated by silences where the waveform is a horizontal line.

## Adjustment lines

The blue *volume line* graphically models the volume changes you have made to the track and clip. If you have not adjusted the volume at all, the line runs straight along the clip at about three-quarters of the clip height. This is the “zero gain” (0 dB) level, where the clip’s original volume has been neither increased nor decreased.

If you raise or lower the volume of the entire track, the volume line remains horizontal, but is now higher or lower than the zero-gain base level.

Finally, if you make volume adjustments *within* the clip, the line consists of sloping segments that meet at *volume adjustment handles*.



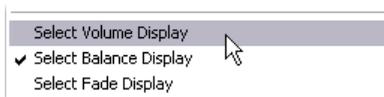
Unlike the waveform graph, or the adjustment lines for balance and fade (see below), the volume adjustment line is scaled *logarithmically*. Perceived volume varies logarithmically with the strength of an audio signal, so this feature allows the adjustment line to model more accurately what you really hear. For instance, an upward-sloping line segment will produce a smooth, steady fade up from the starting to the ending level.

The green *stereo balance line* and the red *front-back balance* (“fade”) *line* work similarly to the volume line, except that in both cases the neutral position is the vertical center of the clip, and the adjustment scale is linear.

Raising the stereo balance line positions the audio clip’s output further to the listener’s left, while lowering it positions the clip further to the listener’s right. Similarly, raising the fade line moves the clip away from the listener, and lowering it brings the clip towards the listener.

**Note:** You can only view and edit a clip’s *fade* line when the *Volume and balance* tool is in *surround* mode. The effect of adjusting the line can be previewed only on systems where surround-sound playback is available.

To select which of the three adjustment lines is currently displayed, use the audio clip’s right-button context menu:



**Availability:** Surround sound is supported in Studio Plus only.

---

## Adjusting audio on the Timeline

---

Audio levels can be adjusted directly within a clip on the Timeline. Use the mouse pointer to adjust the blue volume line or either of the balance lines (see “Anatomy of an audio clip” on page 213).

When you add a new audio clip to the Timeline:

- The volume adjustment line of the newly-created clip connects the lines from the preceding and following clips if any are present.
- If no volume adjustments have been made to other clips on the track, the volume line through the new clip is horizontal. Its height reflects the overall track volume as set in the *Volume and balance* tool.
- If no volume adjustments have been made either to other clips or to the overall track volume, the volume line through the new clip is at three-quarters height.

To adjust the volume of a clip on the Timeline, select it (by left clicking), then move your mouse pointer close to the line. The *volume adjustment cursor* will appear:



Click the left mouse button, and drag up or down within the clip. The volume line follows the mouse.



When you release the mouse, Studio creates an *adjustment handle* on the volume line.



When your mouse pointer is positioned over an adjustment handle on a selected clip, a highlighted version of the volume adjustment cursor appears. With this cursor, you can click and drag the adjustment handle both vertically and horizontally.



Right-click an adjustment handle to access the context menu command *Delete volume setting*. This command removes one adjustment handle. Use *Remove volume changes* to remove all the handles from the clip.

## Adjusting balance and fade

The left-right and front-back balance lines have the same editing features as the volume line just discussed, except that with them the neutral setting is at half the clip height, instead of three-quarters as it is for volume.

In the case of left-right (stereo) balance, adjusting the line upwards from the center positions the audio further to the left. With front-back balance (“fade”), adjusting the line upwards moves the apparent source of the audio away from the listener, while adjusting the line downwards brings the audio closer (towards the rear speakers).

## Removing changes

Audio adjustment handles can be removed either individually or for an entire audio clip at once. Select

the appropriate command on the clip's right-button pop-up menu:



---

## The Volume and balance tool

---

Compared to adjusting audio on the Timeline, the *Volume and balance* tool offers a greater degree of adjustment functionality organized into one convenient location. It also provides both left-right and surround-sound balance controls. The tool operates in a similar way to a traditional audio mixer.



**Availability:** Surround sound playback is supported in Studio Plus only.



The *Volume and balance* tool provides individual level controls for each of the audio tracks: *original audio* (left in illustration), *overlay audio*, *sound effect and voice-over*, and *background music* (right). The

*overlay audio* controls are displayed only when the *overlay* video and audio tracks are open in the Movie Window.

The *balance control*, located in the right-hand part of the tool, can position the audio of any clip – or part of one – in *stereo* (one-dimensional) or either of two *surround* (two-dimensional) modes. The mode is selected in the dropdown list above the control.



Each audio track has its own set of level controls. The set for the *original audio* track is shown at left.

The individual controls and displays include a *track mute* button ❶. When this button is in its *down* position, no audio clips from the track will be used in your movie. The *track mute* button's icon has a second purpose: it identifies which track the level controls apply to. This is the only visible point of difference amongst the three sets of controls.

The *track level* knob ❷ raises or lowers the overall volume for the track. It therefore affects the vertical position of the volume adjustment lines on all clips on the track, but does not change their contour. Click on the knob and drag it with a clockwise rotation (up to the 2 o'clock maximum position) to increase the volume. Use a counterclockwise rotation (down to the 6 o'clock minimum) to lower the volume.



*Level knobs, full off (L), default (C) and full on (R).*

The track's *relative level* scale ❸, with its associated *fader* ❹, are calibrated in decibels (dB). The 0 dB mark corresponds to the level at which the clip was recorded.

The position of the fader knob shows the volume level at the current playback position in your movie, relative to the level at which the current clip was recorded. Drag the knob up or down to modify the level. The knob is “grayed” (disabled) if there is no clip on the track at the current time index. If the track is muted, the knob is grayed and set to the bottom of its range. Adjusting the fader results in a volume adjustment handle being added to the track as described above.

A track's playback volume contour, or *envelope*, combines the overall track level with the relative level at each point on the track. This combined level, which is shown graphically by the volume adjustment lines on audio clips, is applied to the actual audio data to produce the track's output level, as represented on the *level meter* ❺, which illuminates during playback to show the level at the current time index. To avoid audio “clipping” – the unpleasant sound produced by attempting to set volume levels outside the range of a digital signal – ensure that the meter level never quite reaches the top of the bar.

The *fade* buttons ❻ produce a fade-in from or a fade-out to the current position of the movie. For a visual confirmation of their effect, watch the behavior of the clip's volume adjustment line when the fade buttons are clicked. The fade duration is variable from zero to fifty-nine seconds. Adjust it in the *Project preferences* options panel (*Setup* ➤ *Project Preferences*) under *Volume fades*. Fades are not available too close to the beginning or end of a clip.

## The balance control

This control has three modes, *stereo*, *surround* and *dialog*, which you select from the dropdown list above the control. The mode can be changed whenever desired – even within an individual audio clip.



**Availability:** Surround sound is supported in Studio Plus only.

In any mode, the position of each track at each point in the movie is shown by its speaker icon, or “puck”. The icon matches the one on the muting indicator for the corresponding track.

In *stereo* mode, you set the position of the track by dragging its puck left and right between a pair of main speakers:



*Positioning the original audio in the middle of a stereo mix with the sound effects track (L) and the overlay track (R) on opposite sides. The music track is shown as a gray outline (right of center), indicating either that the track has been muted or that there is no clip on the track at this time index.*

In *surround* mode, you can position each track from front to back (“fade”) as well as from left to right (“balance”). Each track can be independently placed

anywhere within the rectangular listening area defined by the four corner speakers.

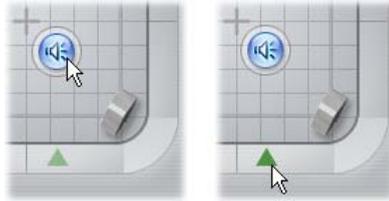
*Dialog* mode is similar in concept, but includes the center speaker at the front of the listening area. Sending a portion of a clip's audio through the center helps stabilize the apparent location of the sound within the shifting surround mix. At the same time, the placement of the sound source can be freely varied in two dimensions as with the standard *surround* mode.



*Surround and Dialog modes: At left, the music track, in Surround Mode, is positioned at the rear of the listening field. The original audio track at the same time index is in Dialog Mode, shown at right. The Dialog mode focuses the original audio by including the center speaker in the mix.*

There are two ways to set the position of a track's icon in the balance control. Either click on any track's icon and drag it to the desired position, or move it by dragging the triangular *locator knobs* below and to the right of the control. The locator knob below the balance control adjusts the left-right positioning of the audio

output from the currently-selected clip, while the knob on the right adjusts the front-back positioning.



*Drag track icon directly (L) or with locator knob (R).*

## Viewing volume and balance contours

Each audio clip in your project displays a contour line showing one of its volume, left-right balance or front-back balance. To select which of the three types of line is displayed, use the commands on an audio clip's right-button context menu (see “Anatomy of an audio clip” on page 213).

The contour lines can be modified directly on the Timeline using *adjustment handles*. For details, see “Adjusting audio on the Timeline” on page 216.



## AUDIO EFFECTS

You can modify any audio clip in your project using Studio's plug-in audio effects, which are accessed with the *Audio effects* tool, the sixth tool in the Audio toolbox. The operation of this tool is identical to that of the *Video effects* tool. See “Using video effects” (page 98) for a complete description.



As with video effects, your library of audio plug-ins is expandable. Any audio effect using the popular VST standard can be used in Studio just like effects supplied with the program.

## Icons for audio effects



In Timeline mode, any special effects you have applied to an audio or video clip are indicated by small icons along the bottom of the clip. These correspond to the categories shown by the *Add new effect* browser in the *Audio effects* and *Video effects* tools. Those categories are explained under “Video Effects Library” on page 109. You can open the appropriate tool for parameter editing by double-clicking any of the icons.

In the illustration, the *Noise reduction* effect has been applied to both audio clips. The star icon below the video clip shows that one or more of the effects in the Fun category has been applied to it.

## About the effects

The powerful Noise Reduction filter is provided in all versions of Studio. It is covered immediately below.

Studio Plus includes an extra group of audio effects. These are each briefly described starting on page 226. Full documentation of the parameters for the Plus effects is included in their context-sensitive on-line help which can be viewed by clicking the *help* button  at the top left of the parameters panel for each effect, or by pressing the F1 key when the panel is open.

In a special category is the Studio Plus *Speed* effect, which is currently unique in that it operates on video and audio simultaneously. It is covered on page 113.

---

## Noise reduction

---

This advanced filter suppresses unwanted noise in any audio clip. The filter responds dynamically to the changing noise conditions within the clip. The preset you choose provides the starting point from which the adaptive algorithm proceeds.

You can often further improve your results by adjusting the *Noise reduction* and *Fine tuning* parameters. There is a lag of about a second before any new setting has an audible effect, so you should make small changes then pause to check if there is an improvement.



**Noise reduction:** When a camcorder is used outdoors with the actors distant from the microphone, the “source noise” may be very high, and to make matters worse the internal noise of the camcorder may be amplified to intrusive levels. If a lapel microphone connected to the line input of the camcorder were used when taping the scene, however, the source noise could be quite low. Adjust this control to match the noise conditions of the actual signal.

**Fine tuning:** This controls the amount of cleaning to be used. It is only needed when the *Noise reduction* level is low, since at higher levels the noise has already been eliminated.

**Auto adapt:** When this option is checked, the filter automatically adjusts to changes in the type or amount of noise in the clip. The *Fine tuning* is not used when *Auto adapt* is active.

**Remove wind:** This checkbox engages a filter that reduces wind noise and similar unwanted background sounds in the audio clip.

**Note:** The *Noise reduction* filter will help with a wide range of material, but it is not a panacea. Your results will vary depending on the original material and the severity and nature of the problems.



## PLUS EFFECTS

The Studio Plus pack of audio effects is included with Studio Plus only. Users of other Studio versions can obtain these effects by upgrading to Studio Plus.

This section briefly introduces each effect in the group. Full descriptions, including all parameters, are available in the context-sensitive help when the effect parameters window is open in Studio Plus.

The effects appear below in the same order as they do in the effects browser.

---

### ChannelTool

---

The basic action of this Studio Plus effect is to route your stereo audio signal. It allows you to connect either

or both of the left and right input channels to either or both of the output channels. In addition, ChannelTool offers special-purpose presets, including *Phase reverse* and *Voice removal* – the “karaoke” effect.

---

## Chorus

---

The Studio Plus Chorus creates a richer sound by repeatedly reintroducing “echoes” into the audio stream. By controlling properties like the frequency with which the echoes recur, and the decay in volume from one repetition to the next, a variety of results is possible, including flanger-like sounds and other special effects.

---

## DeEsser

---

This Studio Plus audio filter unobtrusively removes excessive sibilance from recorded speech. Parameters allow you to fine-tune the effect to the particular recording you need to correct.

---

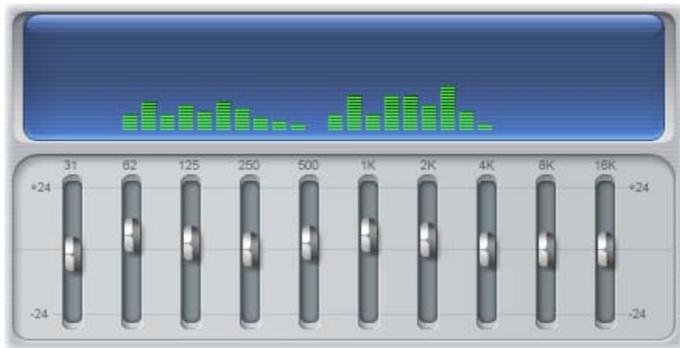
## Equalizer

---

Graphic equalizers like this one in Studio Plus are similar in concept to the treble and bass “tone” controls on audio equipment, but provides a much finer degree

of adjustment. Studio's equalizer divides the audio spectrum into ten *bands*, each centered on a different sound frequency.

**Note:** In musical terms, each equalization band covers one *octave*, and the center frequency is close in pitch to the note B.



The sliders let you increase or decrease the contribution of each band's frequencies to the total sound over a range of 48 dB (-24 to +24). The adjustment to a band is applied full strength at the center frequency, and tapers to zero in either direction.

The display above the slider shows the activity across the audio spectrum as your project is played back.

---

## Grungelizer

---

The Studio Plus Grungelizer adds noise and static to your recordings. It can make your clips sound as

though you were hearing them on a radio with bad reception or a worn and scratched vinyl record.



---

## Leveler

---

This Studio Plus effect helps compensate for a common problem in recording audio for video productions: the imbalance in the recorded volume of different elements in the original audio. For instance, your commentary as you shoot the video may be recorded at such a high level that it overwhelms other sounds at the location.

The trick in using the *Leveler* is to find a target volume somewhere between that of the loud and soft audio in the original clip. Below that volume, *Leveler* acts as an *expander*, increasing the original level by a fixed ratio. Above the target volume, *Leveler* acts as a *compressor*, reducing the original level. With careful adjustment of the parameters, the internal balance of the audio can be significantly improved.

---

## Reverb

---

The Studio Plus *Reverb* effect simulates the effect of playing back the source sound in a room of a given size and sound reflectivity. The interval between the arrival of the original sound at the listener's ears and the first echoes is greater for a large room than a small one. The rate at which the echoes die away depends on both the room size and the reflectivity of the walls.

The presets for *Reverb* are named for the type of room they simulate – from the passenger cabin of a car all the way up to a huge underground cavern.

---

## Stereo Echo

---

The Stereo Echo effect, available in Studio Plus, allows you to set separate delays on each of the left and right channels, with feedback and balance controls to provide a variety of interesting sounds.

---

## Stereo Spread

---

This Studio Plus effect allows you to decrease or increase the apparent width of the stereo listening field in an audio clip. Most often it is used to create a mix that sounds more open and spacious.



# Making your movie

One of the great things about digital video is the large and growing number of devices that can make use of it. Studio lets you create versions of your movie for whatever video viewers your audience will be using, from hand-held DivX players to HDTV home theaters.

When you have finished editing your project, switch to Make Movie mode by clicking the *Make Movie* button at the top of the screen.



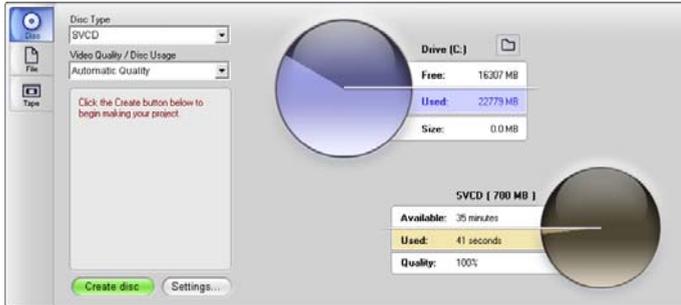
This opens the Output Browser, which lets you tell Studio with a few clicks everything it needs to know to output your movie in the form you want.

Begin by selecting the media type of your finished movie from the three tabs at the left side of the window: *Disc*, *File* or *Tape*.

 *Disc* output lets you copy a movie onto a disc in your computer's CD or DVD recorder. See page 233 for more information.

 *File* output creates files that can be viewed from your hard drive, your web-site, your portable movie player – even your mobile phone. See page 237.

 *Tape* output records your movie onto tape in a camcorder or VCR. This tab also lets you output the movie to your monitor screen. See page 242.



*The Output Browser. The tabs at left let you save to disc, file or tape. Other controls let you set output options as needed for the chosen media type. On the right is a graphical display of disc usage.*

Output can be configured quickly within each media type using the dropdown lists in the Output Browser.



If you need hands-on control, click the *Settings* button to open the correct panel of options for your chosen media type. When you have confirmed your settings, click the *Create* button to begin output.



## Preparing your movie for output

Before your movie is completely ready for output some preprocessing will usually be required. In general, Studio will need to “render” (generate video frames in the output format for) any transitions, titles, disc menus and video effects you’ve added to your movie.



## OUTPUT TO DISC MEDIA

Studio can output movies directly onto DVD, VCD (VideoCD) and SVCD (Super VideoCD) discs, if the required disc burning hardware is available on your system.

If your system is equipped with a CD burner, Studio can create VCD or S-VCD discs on either CD-R or CD-RW media.

### **Your VCD discs can be played back:**

- On a VCD or S-VCD player.
- On some DVD players. Most DVD players can handle CD-RW media, but many will not reliably read CD-R. A majority of DVD players can handle the VCD format.
- On a computer with a CD or DVD drive and MPEG-1 playback software (such as Windows Media Player).

### **Your S-VCD discs can be played back:**

- On an S-VCD player.

- On some DVD players. Most DVD players can handle CD-RW media, but many will not reliably read CD-R. DVD players sold in Europe and North America usually cannot read S-VCD discs; players sold in Asia often can.
- On a computer with a CD or DVD drive and MPEG-2 playback software.

If your system has a DVD burner, Studio can create (in addition to the above) DVD discs on any recordable DVD media supported by the drive.

### **Your DVD discs can be played back:**

- On any DVD player that can handle the recordable DVD format your burner creates. Most players can handle the common formats.
- On a computer with a DVD drive and playback software.

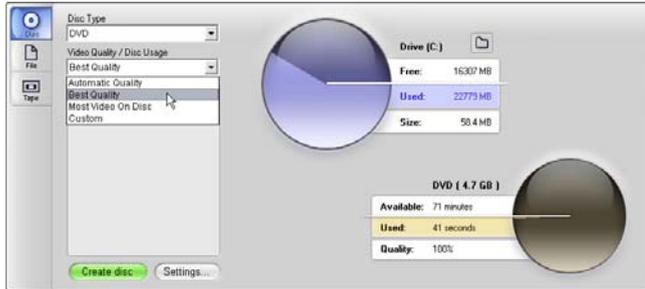
Whether or not you have a DVD burner on your system, Studio also lets you save a *DVD image* – a set of files containing the same information that would be stored onto a DVD disc – to a directory on your hard drive. The DVD image can later be burned to disc.

### **Studio creates your disc or disc image in three steps.**

1. First the entire movie must be *rendered* to generate the MPEG-encoded information to store on the disc.
2. Next, the disc must be *compiled*. In this phase, Studio creates the actual files and directory structure that will be used on the disc.
3. Finally, the disc must be *burned*. (This step is skipped if you are generating a DVD image rather than an actual disc.)

## To output your movie to disc, or to a DVD image:

1. Click the *Disc* tab to bring up this display:



The two circular displays summarize your disc usage. The upper one shows the amount of hard drive storage that will be required during the making of your movie, and the other shows an estimate of the time the movie will occupy on your writable CD or DVD.

Use the *folder* button  to change the hard drive location Studio uses for storing auxiliary files. If you are creating a DVD image, it will also be stored in that folder.

2. Select the Format – that is, disc type – you are using, then whichever Preset best matches your intent.



If you wish to fine-tune your output settings, choose the Custom preset then click the *Settings* button to bring up the *Make Disc* options panel (see “*Make disc settings*” on page 262).

3. Click the green *Create disc* button. Studio goes through the steps described above (render, compile, and if necessary burn) to create the disc or disc image you have specified in the *Make Disc* options panel.
4. When Studio has finished the burning operation, it ejects the disc.

## Quality and capacity of disc formats

The differences amongst the DVD, VCD and S-VCD disc formats can be boiled down to these rules of thumb regarding the video quality and capacity of each format:

- **VCD:** Each disc holds about 60 minutes of MPEG-1 video, with about half the quality of DVD.
- **S-VCD:** Each disc holds about 20 minutes of MPEG-2 video, with about two-thirds the quality of DVD.
- **DVD:** Each disc holds about 60 minutes of full-quality MPEG-2 video (120 minutes if the disc recorder supports dual-layer recording).



## OUTPUT TO FILE

Studio can create movie files in all of these formats:

- AVI
- DivX
- iPod compatible
- MPEG-1, MPEG-2, MPEG-4
- Real Media
- Sony PSP compatible
- Windows Media

Choose whichever format matches the needs of your audience and the details of their viewing hardware.

The size of the output file depends on both the file format and the compression parameters set within the format. Although compression settings can easily be adjusted to produce small files, heavy compression comes at the expense of quality.

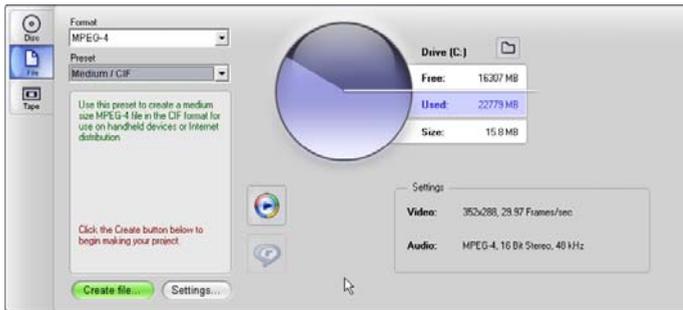
The detailed settings for most formats can be adjusted by choosing the Custom preset and clicking the *Settings* button. Other presets load settings designed for typical situations. See *Appendix A: Setup options* for information about options in Studio.

When your output options are in place, click the *Create file* button. A file browser opens to let you specify a name and location for the video file you are creating.

As a convenience, the Output Browser also provides buttons for launching any desired media file in Windows Media Player or Real



Player, so you can view your output file in an external player as soon as you have created it.

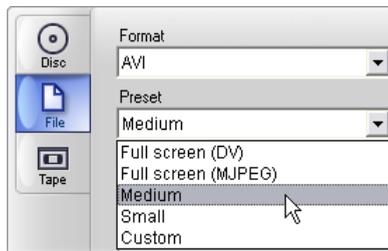


*The File tab of the Output Browser*

## AVI

Although the AVI file type for digital video is itself widely supported, the actual coding and decoding of video and audio data in an AVI file is performed by separate *codec* software.

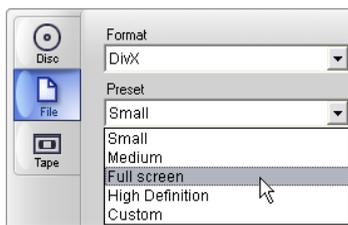
Studio supplies a DV and an MJPEG codec. If you wish to output your movie as an AVI in some other format, you can use any DirectShow-compatible codec installed on your PC, as long as that codec is also installed on the PC that will play your movie.



Click the preset that best meets your needs; or choose *Custom*, then click the *Settings* button to open the *Make File* options panel (see page 265).

## DivX

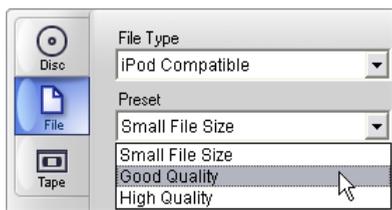
This file format, based on MPEG-4 video compression technology, is popular for video files disseminated over the Internet. It is also supported by a range of DivX-compatible hardware devices, from DVD players to portable and handheld units.



Click whichever of the quality presets matches your needs; or choose *Custom*, then click the *Settings* button to open the *Make File* options panel (see page 265).

## iPod compatible

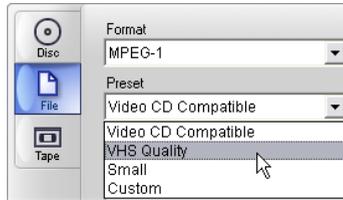
Like DivX, this file format is based on MPEG-4 video compression technology. The combination of powerful compression with a small 320x240 frame size produces very small output files relative to the more expansive formats. The generated files are compatible with the popular Video iPod devices, and may work with some other devices types as well.



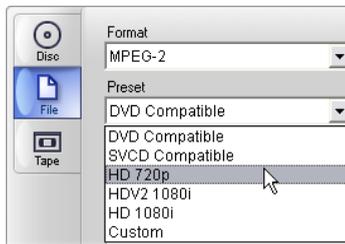
The three quality presets select different data rates, each providing a different balance of quality and file size.

## MPEG

**MPEG-1** is the original MPEG file format. MPEG-1 video compression is used on VideoCDs, but in other contexts it has given way to newer standards.



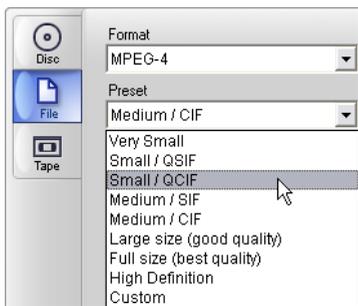
**MPEG-2** is the successor format to MPEG-1. Whereas the MPEG-1 file format is supported on all Windows 95 and later PCs, MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 files can only be played on PCs with appropriate decoder software installed. Two of the MPEG-2 presets support HD (High Definition) playback equipment.



**MPEG-4** is another member of the MPEG family. It offers image quality similar to MPEG-2 but with even greater compression. It is particularly suitable for Internet use. Two of the MPEG-4 presets (QCIF and QSIF) create “quarter-frame” video sized for cell-phones; two others (CIF and SIF) create “full-frame” video suitable for handheld viewers.

**Custom presets.** With all MPEG variants, *Custom* lets you configure movie output in detail by clicking the

*Settings* button to open the *Make File* options panel (see page 265).

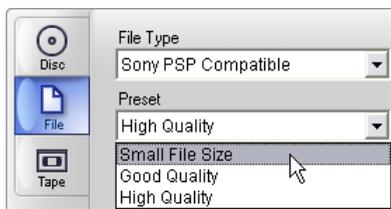


## Real Media

Real Media movie files are designed for playback on the Internet. Real Media movies can be played back by anyone around the world who has the RealNetworks® RealPlayer® software, which is a free download from [www.real.com](http://www.real.com). See page 270 for information about configuring your output with the *Make File – Real Media* options panel.

## Sony PSP compatible

This is another file format based on MPEG-4 video compression technology. As with the iPod-compatible type, the combination of powerful compression with a small 320x240 frame size produces very small output files relative to the more expansive formats. The generated files are compatible with the popular Sony PlayStation Portable devices, and may work with some other devices types as well.



## Windows Media

The Windows Media file format is also designed for streaming Internet playback. The files can be played on any computer where the Windows Media player – a free program from Microsoft – is installed. See page 273 for information about configuring your output with the *Make File – Real Media* options panel.



## OUTPUT TO TAPE

Choose the *Tape* tab on the Output Browser when you want to send your output to an external video device – a television, camcorder or VCR – or to “VGA”, for viewing on your monitor screen.

---

### Configuring the camera or recorder...

---

Make sure your recording device is properly connected before you begin to generate the movie.

#### Output via IEEE-1394 cable

If your recording device has a DV input, just connect it to your digital video hardware with an IEEE-1394 (or “i.LINK”) cable. The connector at the camcorder end should be labeled **DV IN/OUT**.

**Note:** On machines that don’t support recording back to the camcorder, including many PAL devices, the DV connector is called simply **DV OUT**.

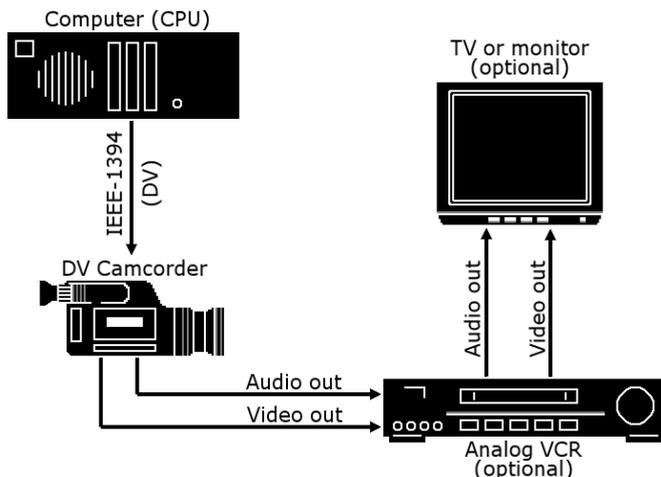
## Output with analog audio / video cables

If you have a Studio product with an analog (TV or video) output, such as Studio DVplus or DC10plus, connect the video outputs of the capture card to the inputs of the video recorder and the audio outputs of the sound card (or the capture card, if it has them) to the audio inputs of the video recorder.

## Connecting a TV set or video monitor

Many camcorders have an integrated display, making it unnecessary to attach a video monitor.

Otherwise, to view your movie as it is recorded, a TV set or a video monitor must be attached to the video outputs of your recorder. Video outputs are not always available on DV camcorders.



---

## Output your movie to videotape

---

Verify that the camcorder/VCR is powered on and configured, and that you have inserted a tape cued to

where you wish to begin recording. You now have two options:

1. If you are recording your movie onto a DV tape, Studio gives you the option to control the DV device automatically. Click the *Settings* button then activate the check box in the *Output options* area.

With most DV devices there is a small delay between receiving the command to record and the actual start of recording. Since it varies from one device to another, you may need to experiment with the *Record delay time* value for best results with your particular device.

2. If you are recording onto analog tape, start your VCR recording now.

Finally, click *Play* in the Player.

## APPENDIX A:

# Setup options

Settings are provided to adjust various aspects of Studio's operation. The default values have been chosen to work well for the majority of situations and hardware. However, you may wish to modify them to suit either your work style or your specific equipment configuration.

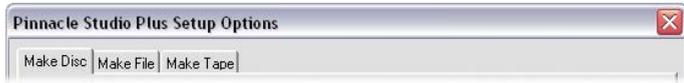
### About Studio setup options

Studio's setup options are divided between two tabbed dialog boxes, both with several panels.

The Main Options dialog box has four panels covering options relating to Capture mode and Edit mode. Open this dialog box to the panel of your choice by selecting one of the commands in the first group on the *Setup* menu.



The Make Movie Options dialog box has three panels, one for each of three media types: disc, file and tape. Access this dialog box by selecting one of the commands in the second group on the *Setup* menu.



Option settings in Studio apply to both the current and future Studio sessions. There is no master reset.

---

## Capture source settings

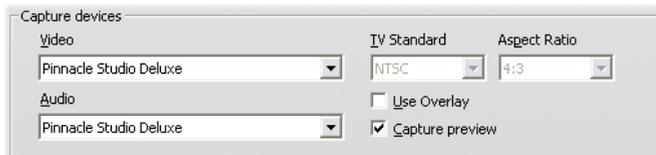
---

Remember that any changes you make on this panel affect all future captures. If you want to configure only one capture session, make sure you restore the old values before the next session.

The settings are grouped into three areas: Capture devices, Scene detection during video capture and Data rate.

### Capture devices

Studio senses which capture hardware you have installed on your system for both video and audio. If you have more than one available capture device in either category, choose the one you want to use for the current capture session.



**Video:** The devices listed here may include both digital equipment connected via an IEEE-1394 cable and various types of analog video source (Studio DC10plus, TV tuner card, USB-connected camera, etc). Your selection determines the availability of some other

*Capture source* settings, and of many settings on the *Capture format* panel.

**Audio:** Your choice of audio devices is constrained by which video device is selected. With most analog devices, for instance, you can choose any of your sound card inputs; your equipment configuration determines which one you should use.

**TV standard:** Choose the standard that is compatible with your capture device and your TV or video monitor (NTSC or PAL). NTSC is the standard used in North America and Japan. PAL is the standard used in most other places. With some capture devices you may have an additional choice: the SECAM standard used in Russia, France and some other countries. If you purchased your Studio product in North America, the option is permanently set to NTSC.

**Use overlay:** If you are performing an analog capture with Studio AV/DV, you will have the option of using the “overlay” capability of your graphics hardware when previewing the capture. This may make the preview smoother, but is not supported by all graphics cards. Turn off this option only if it causes problems.

**VCR input:** This option, which is available with some analog capture devices, should be checked if your source device is a VCR. When the option activated, capture will be more tolerant of A/V synchronization problems in the incoming signal.

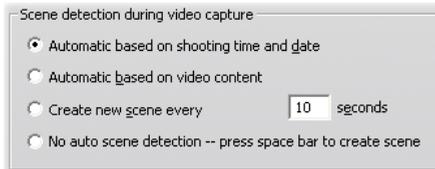
**Capture preview:** This option controls whether the incoming video will be previewed in the Player during capture. Because generating the preview uses a significant amount of processor time, previewing may cause dropped frames during capture on some systems.

Only turn off the option if you are having a problem with dropped frames.

**Aspect ratio:** This dropdown list specifies whether the video source for future analog captures should be interpreted as having normal (4:3) or widescreen (16:9) format.

## Scene detection during video capture

The effect of these scene detection options is described under “Automatic scene detection” on page 27. The options that are actually available depend on the capture device being used: not all devices support all modes.



The first option, “Automatic scene detection based on shooting time and date”, is available only if you are capturing from a DV source.

Your DV camcorder records not only images and sound, but also the time, date, and various camera exposure settings (see your camcorder manual for more detail). This information is termed *data code*, and is transferred through the IEEE-1394 link along with the video and audio.

Under the default setting, Studio uses the data code information to determine when each new scene begins. It grabs the first frame of each new scene to use as an icon for display in the Album.

Data code does not work if the tape:

- includes one or more blank (unrecorded) sections
- is unreadable due to tape damage or electronic noise

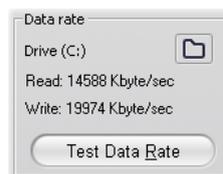
- was recorded without the camcorder time or date set
- is a copy of another tape
- was shot on an 8mm or Hi8 camcorder, and is now being played back on a Digital8 camcorder.

Under the final option – “No auto scene detection” – a new scene is created each time you press the [Space] key.

## Data rate

The DV format uses a fixed 5:1 compression ratio, which implies a data transfer rate for real-time capture of approximately 3.6 megabytes per second (MB/sec). The transfer rate of your capture drive must be at least 4 MB/sec to allow for any variations across the drive.

**Test data rate:** Click this button to test the data rate of your current capture drive. Studio writes and reads a file of known length, and gives you a read-out of the results in KB/sec (4000 KB/sec equals 4 MB/sec).



If you have attempted to capture DV scenes and your capture drive can't accept the DV data rate, a dialog box will inform you of the problem. You have the options of choosing another drive or adding one that meets the data rate requirement.

**Folder browser:** This button  sets the disk directory (and thus the drive) in which your captures will be saved, and lets you specify a default file name for captures. The *Test Data Rate* button will perform its test on the drive where this capture directory is located.

---

## Capture format settings

---

The options available here depend on the capture device you are using (from the *Capture source* tab). You will not see all the settings described below displayed at once.

### Presets

The settings in the other areas on the *Capture format* panel depend on your choice in this *Presets* area. The available presets depend in turn on your capture hardware.



For a DV capture source, the main capture options are selected in the first of two dropdown lists. (The other list provides any applicable sub-options.) The choices are:

- **DV:** Full quality DV capture, which uses about 200 MB of disk space per minute of video. There are no sub-options with this setting. DV capture is recommended over MPEG if outputting your project to videotape is a possibility.
- **MPEG:** Capturing to MPEG takes less space than DV but more time – both when capturing and later, when you output your movie. The quality presets (High, Medium and Low) are available as sub-options, plus a Custom preset that lets you configure the video settings manually. The best preset to use is the lowest one that meets the requirements of all the devices on which your movie will be played. Use

Low if you are outputting only for VCD; Medium if you need to accommodate S-VCD; and High if your movie will be output for DVD.

Other types of capture device provide a single list of quality options – generally Good, Better, Best and Custom.



Studio AV/DV Analog captures use fixed capture settings with no further options.

## Video settings

The settings available in this area depend on both the capture device and the options selected for it in the *Presets* area. Only applicable settings are shown. The settings are editable only if you are using a Custom preset.

**Options:** This button gives you access to any setup options offered by the codec (compression/decompression software) you have chosen.

**Compression:** Use this dropdown list to select the codec you want to use.

**Width, Height:** These fields control the dimensions of the captured video.

**Frame rate:** The number of frames per second you wish to capture. The two numerical options represent full-speed and half-speed video respectively. The lower number (14.985 for NTSC, 12.50 for PAL or SECAM) saves disk space at the expense of smoothness.

**Quality, Data rate:** Some codecs present quality options in terms of a compression percentage (*Quality*),

and others in terms of the required data transfer rate in KB/sec (*Data rate*).

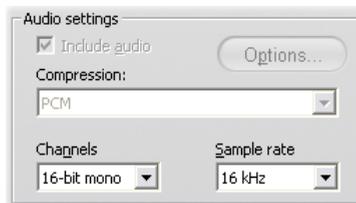
**MPEG type:** Select one of the two flavors of MPEG encoding: MPEG1 or MPEG2. The former is almost universally supported on Windows computers; the latter gives better quality for a given compression ratio.

**Resolution:** This is a dropdown list giving the resolutions available with the capture options you have picked. Increasing both the width (the first figure) and the height by a factor of two increases the amount of data to be processed by a factor of four.

**Fast encode:** This option speeds up the encoding process with some reduction in quality when capturing to an MPEG file. You may want to evaluate the effect of this option in your production using a short test capture.

## Audio settings

These audio capture settings are editable only if you are using a Custom preset.



**Include audio:** Clear this checkbox if you are not planning to use the captured audio in your production.

**Options:** This button gives you access to any setup options offered by the codec (compression/decompression software) you have chosen.

**Compression:** This dropdown shows the codec that will be used to compress the incoming audio data.

**Channels, Sample rate:** These settings control audio quality. “CD quality” is 16-bit stereo, 44.1 kHz.

## MPEG capture

This area is visible only when an MPEG preset for the capture format has been selected.

The three options on the dropdown list control whether MPEG encoding is performed during capture, or as a separate step when capture is complete.

- *Use default encoding mode* lets Studio decide which of the other two choices to use given the speed of your computer.
- *Encode in real time* means that capture and encoding occur in one step. This will produce good results only on a fast enough machine.
- *Encode after capturing* means that encoding will not be performed until the capture itself is complete. This takes longer but is more reliable if you have a slower CPU.

---

## Project preferences

---

These settings are split into five areas, which are covered in the subtopics below. Hardware settings relating to editing are on the *Video and audio preferences* panel (see page 257).

## Editing environment

**Automatically save and load my projects:** If this option is checked, Studio will continually update your stored project while you work without you having to save your changes explicitly. If you would prefer to look after your own loads and saves, leave this option unchecked.

**Show large storyboard thumbnails:** Check this box to get more detail in the thumbnail frames shown by Storyboard view in the Movie Window.

**Show premium content, Show premium features:** Premium content and features allow you to expand Studio easily and conveniently when you need more resources or more power to enhance your movies. *Premium content* refers to add-on effects, transitions, titles, menus and sound effects. *Premium features* refers to pan and zoom, chroma key, and other advanced capabilities.

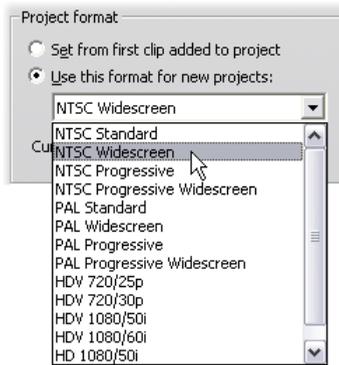
Check the boxes if you would like the premium items to be listed in the Album and other appropriate places in Studio.

In general, when you click on a premium item you will be offered the chance to purchase and install it immediately, without leaving Studio, if you have an Internet connection available. See “Expanding Studio” on page 11 for further information.

## Project format

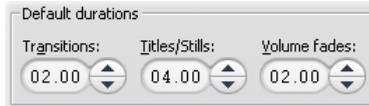
By default, your Studio movie project is in the same video format as the first clip you add to it. If you want to force new projects to a different format, click *Use*

this format for new projects, and select your desired format from the dropdown list.



## Default durations

These duration times are measured in seconds and frames. The seconds counter advances every 30 frames for NTSC, or 25 frames for PAL.

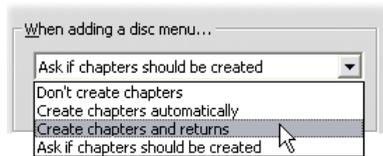


The three settings here control the initial duration value for transitions, still images and volume fades when added to your movie. The durations can be trimmed to custom values during editing. The default values upon installation are as shown in the illustration above.

## When adding a disc menu

When you place a disc menu on the Timeline, Studio inquires whether you want to generate *chapter links* from the menu to all the clips that follow it (at least until the next menu). The choices on this dropdown list let you avoid the confirmation dialog by specifying that

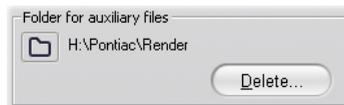
you always don't or always do want the links to be created, or that you want Studio to create links from a new menu to its chapters and also *return links* back to the menu from the end of each chapter. A final option, "Ask if chapters should be created", enables the confirmation dialog, restoring the factory default.



**Minimum chapter length:** If you have specified that Studio should create chapter links automatically when you add a menu, multiple clips are combined into chapters if necessary to achieve this minimum duration.

## Folder for auxiliary files

Studio generates auxiliary files in many circumstances as you edit and output your project. These are all stored under the disk folder specified here. Click the *Folder* button to change the auxiliary files' location – usually because you need to save space on a particular drive.



**Delete:** This button opens the Delete Auxiliary Files dialog, which lets you recover hard drive space by deleting files created while your project was being rendered.

---

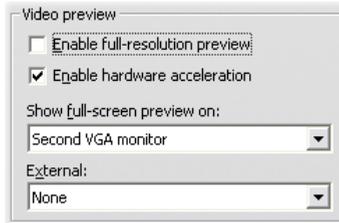
## Video and audio preferences

---

The five areas on this panel provide hardware and previewing settings.

### Video preview

Because of the central role of previewing during interactive video editing, Studio provides a number of settings that affect preview behavior.



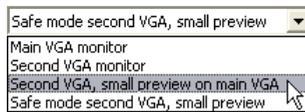
For previewing on a computer monitor, the default preview, at quarter-frame resolution, is probably quite good enough. If you have exacting requirements for the preview, and particularly if you are targeting an external output device for preview (by selecting it on the *External* dropdown list), you may need to check *Enable full-resolution preview*. On some machines there may be a noticeable performance cost to this option.

*Enable hardware acceleration* takes advantage of the advanced capabilities of your graphics card where applicable. The option should be checked unless you are having display problems during preview.

The *Show full screen preview on* dropdown list lets you specify how Studio should preview when you click the

*full-screen* button on the Player. The options available on the list depend on your display hardware.

On a single monitor system, a full-screen preview (other than external) must obviously use the same screen as Studio's own interface. This is the *Main VGA monitor* option. In this special instance, full-screen playback begins from the current play position when you click the *full-screen* button, and ends either at the end of the movie or when you press the Esc key.



With a dual-monitor computer system, you would normally use your second screen as a full-size preview monitor and leave Studio unobscured on your main screen. The display on the second monitor is controlled entirely by the *full-screen* button, independently of whether your movie is playing back or paused.

The most straightforward option for full-screen preview is *Second VGA monitor*. In this mode, the preview is scaled to use as much as possible of the monitor display (without disturbing the aspect ratio of the video). The Player preview on the main screen remains blank, conserving processing power.

The remaining two options are special modes that are offered only if your dual-output video card is one of the following types:

- ATI Radeon 9600 (or better) with version 5.8 (minimum) of the Catalyst™ display driver.

In order to use the additional preview modes, you must *deactivate* the second monitor in the Display Properties dialog (or the Catalyst control center) before launching Studio.

- nVidia GeForce Fx5xxx or better, or an equivalent card in the Quadro series. The minimum driver versions are 81.85 (GeForce) and 81.64 (Quadro).

Before launching Studio, the second monitor must be *activated* as a Windows desktop extension (*not* in the Span or Clone modes).

Studio checks on start-up to see if the above conditions have been met. If they are, the remaining options are made available:

*Second VGA, small preview on main VGA:* This option goes beyond the other full-screen modes by reconfiguring the monitor display to match the exact format of your project's video specifications for frame format and refresh rate. For instance, if your project format is 720x480 with the NTSC refresh rate of 60 Hz, the monitor will be put into that mode for the most accurate possible preview. At the same time, the usual small Player preview is displayed on the main screen.

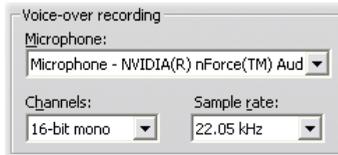
**Note:** Even if you have the correct graphics card, the desired format may still not be supported by a particular monitor. If Studio determines that to be the case, it falls back to the final preview mode (next paragraph).

*Safe mode second VGA, small preview:* In this mode, Studio matches your project video format as well as possible to the formats supported by the monitor. For instance, if the 720x480 frame format is unavailable, Studio will set the display to 800x600 and center the frame on the monitor screen. Similarly, if the monitor does not support 50 Hz (PAL) output at a particular screen size, it will display at 60 Hz instead.

## Voice-over recording

**Microphone:** A dropdown list of choices for attaching a microphone to your hardware.

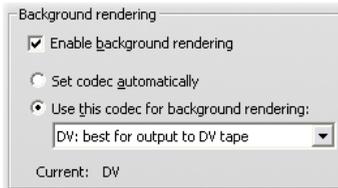
**Channels, Sample rate:** These settings control audio quality. A typical setting for voice-overs is 16-bit mono at 22.05 kHz.



## Background rendering

*Rendering* is the process of generating video for footage that uses HFX transitions, effects or other computationally demanding features of Studio. Until such video has been rendered, it may not display smoothly and with full detail during preview.

Studio is able to carry out rendering behind the scenes while you work, a feature called *background rendering*.



**Enable background rendering:** Uncheck this box if you do not want to use background rendering at all. One might do this on a slower computer if intensive rendering were causing other operations to become sluggish.

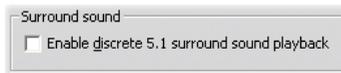
**Set codec automatically:** Let Studio decide which codec to use for encoding your rendered video.

**Use this codec for background rendering:** If you know that your project is going to DV tape, choosing DV as your background rendering format may reduce the rendering time of your final movie. You would normally choose MPEG for as the rendering codec for disc-bound movies for the same reason.

Another consideration arises if you are planning to preview your video on an external device (Studio Plus only). In such cases you may need to set the project format and the background rendering codec to suit the device. For instance, if you are previewing on an analog monitor plugged into your DV camcorder, you should do your background rendering in DV.

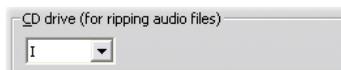
## Surround-sound playback

Check *Enable discrete 5.1 playback* if the audio system you use when previewing your Studio project supports discrete 5.1 audio. Leave it unchecked if you are previewing in surround-sound with a Pro Logic compatible system, or in stereo.



## CD drive (for ripping audio files)

If you have used any music from CD in your project, Studio digitally transfers (“rips”) the audio data from the disc to the computer. The dropdown list here lets you select which CD device to use for ripping, if you have more than one available.



---

## Make Disc settings

---

These settings allow you to adjust options for creating VCD, S-VCD or DVD discs, and for creating a DVD disc image on a hard drive.

To create a VCD or S-VCD requires a CD or DVD burner; to create a DVD requires a DVD burner.

### Format

**Disc Type:** Select VCD, SVCD or DVD.

**Video quality / disc usage:** These settings (*Automatic*, *Best video quality*, *Most video on disc* and *Custom*) are available for S-VCD and DVD discs only. The first three are presets that correspond to particular data rates. The *Custom* option lets you set the data rate to another value. In each case, an estimate is provided of the amount of video the disc can accommodate at the current setting.

**Kbits/sec:** This combination dropdown list and edit field lets you choose or specify the data rate – and hence the video quality and maximum duration – of the disc. Higher values correspond to better quality and lower capacity.

**Audio compression:** Choose one of four options for storing your movie's soundtrack to DVD:

- **PCM** encoding for stereo sound is supported by all DVD players, but takes up more space on the DVD than MPEG.
- **MPEG** audio, in MPA (MPEG-1 Layer 2) format, is always provided on PAL players. On NTSC players it is broadly supported, but theoretically optional.

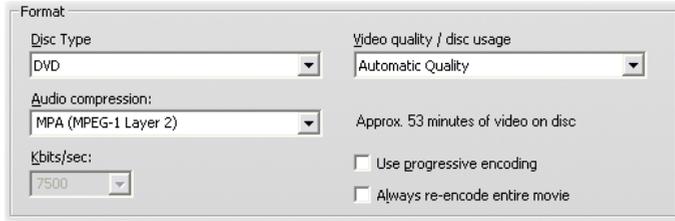
- **Dolby ® Digital 2-channel** encoding can be used to compactly store either a stereo or a surround soundtrack. To hear the surround mix requires equipment with Dolby Pro Logic compatibility. On other systems, it will be heard as a normal stereo mix.
- **Dolby ® Digital 5.1-channel** encoding stores the surround channels discretely. To hear the surround mix on playback requires a surround amplifier and speaker system.

**Use progressive encoding:** Each frame of a normal television picture is displayed as two successive “fields”, each containing half of the several hundred horizontal video lines that make up the entire image: the odd-numbered lines in one field, and the even-numbered lines in the other. The eye sees the superimposed fields as a single image.

This system, called “interlaced scanning”, produces reasonably good results because of the characteristics of television screens and the human visual system.

However, high-definition TV systems and typical computer monitors provide “progressive scanning”, in which the image is drawn from top to bottom at a higher screen refresh rate, producing a clearer image with less flicker. If your DVD player and TV support progressive scanning, or if you are planning to play back the video only on a computer, checking this box will provide superior output quality.

**Always re-encode entire movie:** This option forces your movie to be completely re-rendered for output. It is recommended only if you are experiencing problems with your output movie and want to narrow the possible sources of error.

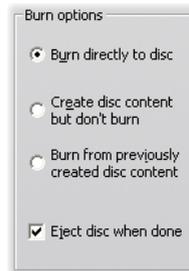


## Burn options

**Burn directly to disc:** Your movie will be burned onto disc according to the settings in the *Format* box.

### **Create disc content but don't burn:**

This choice is only available when the output format is DVD. Your disc burner is not used. Instead, the same files that would normally be saved onto a DVD disc are stored to hard drive as a “disc image”. There are two formats for disc images. Choose the one you want in the *Media and device options* area (see page 265).



**Burn from previously created disc content:** This choice is only available when the output format is DVD. Instead of using your current project directly to burn a disc, a previously-created disc image is now sent to your DVD burner. This lets you divide the work of creating a disc into two separate steps that can be performed in separate sessions if desired. It is particularly useful when you want to make several copies of the same project, or when you want to generate the DVD on one computer but burn it on another.

**Eject disc when done:** Check this box if you would like Studio to automatically eject the disc after the burn process has been completed.

## Media and device options

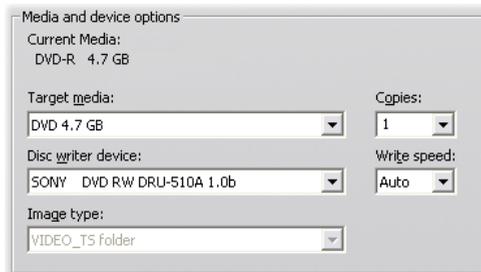
**Target media:** Choose an entry from this dropdown list matching the type and capacity of the disc to which you are burning your project.

**Disc writer device:** If you have more than one disc burner on your system, select the one you want Studio to use.

**Copies:** Select or enter the number of copies of this disc that you want to create.

**Write speed:** Choose one of the available speeds, or leave this field blank to have the speed auto-selected.

**Image type:** This dropdown list lets you choose between the *VIDEO\_TS folder* and *ISO file* image types. This choice may be important if you are planning to access the image with other software.



---

## Make File settings

---

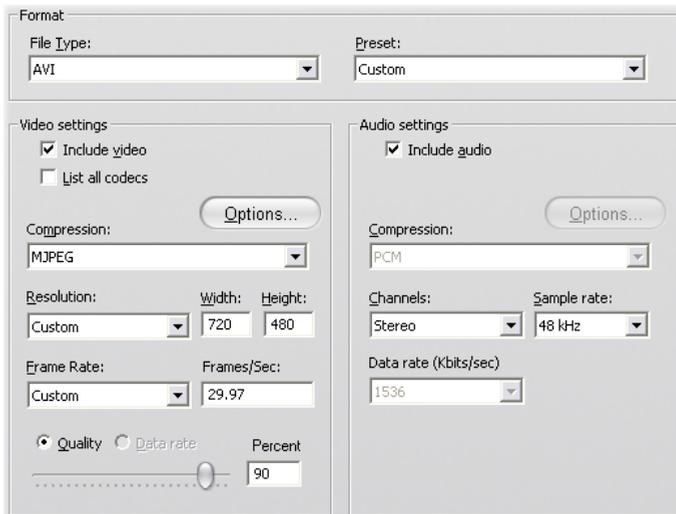
The File Type and Preset lists, which head the *Make File* settings panel for all file types, correspond to the Format and Preset lists in the Output Browser (see *Chapter 12: Making Your Movie*). Most file types share

a common control panel. The Real Media and Windows Media file types have special-purpose control panels, covered separately in “Make Real Media file settings” on page 270 and “Make Windows Media file settings” on page 273.

The common panel, to be described here, is used by all the other supported file types: AVI, DivX, MPEG-1, MPEG-2 and MPEG-4.

The panel lets you manipulate file and compression settings when the Custom preset has been chosen. Most of the file types support customization to some degree.

Custom settings may be used to minimize the size of the output file, to increase its quality, or to prepare it for a special purpose (such as distribution via the Internet) where there may be requirements involving characteristics such as frame size.



*The common Make File settings panel is shared by all file types except Real Media and Windows Media. Not all the options are available for all file types.*

**Note:** MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 files require special decoder software. Without a matching decoder installed on your PC you will not be able to play files of these types.

## Video settings

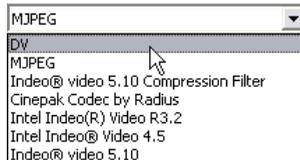
**Include video:** This option is on by default. Clearing the checkbox causes the output file to have audio only.

**List all codecs:** By default this checkbox is *not* checked, so only those codecs are listed that have been certified by Pinnacle Systems for use with Studio. If you check the option, all codecs installed on your PC will be listed, whether certified or not.

Using codecs that have not been certified by Pinnacle Systems may produce undesirable results. Pinnacle Systems cannot provide technical support for problems associated with the use of uncertified codecs.

**Options:** The Options button opens a codec-specific option panel if one is available.

**Compression:** Choose the compressor (codec) that is most suitable for your intended use. When making an AVI file, you'll want to choose your compression settings for the capabilities of, and codecs supported by, the intended viewer's computer platform.

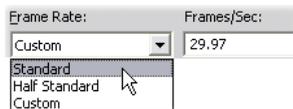


**Resolution:** This is a dropdown list of presets providing standard Width and Height options. The Custom preset lets you set the dimensions directly.

**Width, Height:** The frame size is measured in pixels. The default setting is the resolution at which Studio captures. Decreasing the width and height greatly decreases file size.



**Frame rate:** The standard frame rate is 29.97 frames per second for NTSC, and 25 frames per second for PAL. You may want to set the frame rate lower for applications such as Web video. Most computers can play 352 x 240 at 15 frames per second smoothly, and many can do much better.



**Quality, Data rate:** Depending on the codec being used, you can adjust the quality percentage or data rate with the slider. The higher the percentage or rate you choose, the larger the resulting file.



## Audio settings

If you want to keep file sizes to a minimum, audio for many digital uses can be set to 8-bit mono at 11 kHz. As a rule of thumb, try 8-bit 11 kHz for audio that is mostly speech, and 16-bit stereo at 22 or 44 kHz for audio that is predominantly music. As a benchmark, CD-ROM music is 16-bit stereo sampled at 44 kHz. Another convenient rule of thumb for audio compression is that 11 kHz is roughly equivalent to

AM radio quality; 22 kHz equates to FM radio quality; and 16-bit stereo, 44 kHz is audio CD quality.

**Include audio:** This option is on by default. Clearing the checkbox causes the output file to be silent.

**List all codecs:** By default this checkbox is *not* checked: the only codecs listed are those that have been certified by Pinnacle Systems for use with Studio. Pinnacle Systems cannot provide technical support for problems associated with the use of uncertified codecs.

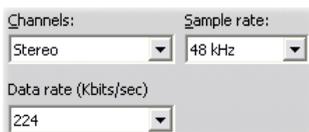
**Options:** The Options button opens a codec-specific option panel if one is available.

**Compression:** The codecs listed here will vary with the file type. In most cases, you will choose either PCM (Pulse Code Modulation) or ADPCM (Adaptive Delta PCM).

**Channels:** You may choose between 8- and 16-bit mono and stereo sound. Sound quality and file size increases when you add a second channel or increase bit depth.

**Sample rate:** Digital audio is produced by taking regular instantaneous samples of the continuous analog waveform. The more samples, the better the sound. For example, audio CDs are recorded at 44 kHz, 16-bit stereo. Audio can be sampled at frequencies as low as 11 kHz for some digital uses, particularly for speech.

**Data rate:** This dropdown controls the data rate, and hence the compression ratio, for audio. Higher data rates yield higher quality at the cost of larger files.



The image shows a screenshot of an audio settings panel. It contains three dropdown menus. The first is labeled 'Channels:' and is set to 'Stereo'. The second is labeled 'Sample rate:' and is set to '48 kHz'. The third is labeled 'Data rate (Kbits/sec)' and is set to '224'.

## Force settings to be the same as the project

Click the *Same as project* button to make your file output use the same format as the highest resolution clip in your current project.

---

## Make Real Media file settings

---

The *Make Real Media File* options panel allows you to adjust Real Media file settings. These configure the creation of files that are to be played back with the popular RealNetworks® RealPlayer®, free for the download from [www.real.com](http://www.real.com).

The screenshot shows the 'Make Real Media File' options panel. It is organized into several sections:

- Format:** 'File Type' is set to 'Real Media' and 'Preset' is set to 'Large'.
- Data:** Contains text input fields for 'Title' (Leave it to Thorkney), 'Author' (Thorkney Grillmarket), 'Copyright' (© 2005 TG Productions), and 'Keywords' (comedy, trumpet, fishing trips).
- Video/Audio Quality:** 'Video Quality' is set to 'Normal Motion Video' and 'Audio Quality' is set to 'Voice with Background Music'.
- Web server:** Radio buttons for 'RealServer' and 'HTTP'.
- Target audience:** Radio buttons for 'Dial-up Modem', 'Single ISDN', 'Dual ISDN', 'Corporate LAN', '256K DSL/Cable', '384K DSL/Cable', and '512K DSL/Cable'.

**Title, Author, Copyright:** These three fields are used to identify each Real Media movie, and are encoded into it so that they are not visible to the casual viewer.

**Keywords:** This field accepts up to 256 characters, and allows you to encode keywords into each movie. It is typically used to identify the movie for Internet search engines.

**Video quality:** These choices let you balance the rival requirements of image quality and frame rate.

- **No video:** When this selection is made, the output file will contain audio only.
- **Normal motion video:** Recommended for mixed content clips to balance video motion and image clarity.
- **Smoothest motion video:** Recommended for clips that contain limited action, such as newscasts or interviews, to enhance overall video motion.
- **Sharpest image video:** Recommended for high-action clips to enhance overall image clarity.
- **Slide show:** The video appears as a series of still photos, providing the best overall image clarity.

**Audio quality:** This dropdown menu lets you choose the characteristics of your audio track. Studio uses this information to select the best audio compression for your Real Media file. Each successive option provides better audio quality but a larger resulting file.

- **No audio:** When this selection is made, the output file will contain video only.
- **Voice only:** This option provides adequate quality for spoken audio in clips without music.
- **Voice with background music:** This option is designed for situations where, even though background music may be present, the spoken audio predominates.
- **Music:** Use this option for a monaural track in which music is prominently featured.
- **Stereo music:** Use this option for a stereo music track.

**Web server:** The *RealServer* option allows you to create a file that can be streamed from a RealNetworks RealServer. The RealServer supports a special feature that senses the connect speed of the viewer's modem, and adjusts its transmission rate to suit. The option allows you to select up to seven *Target audience* data rates. Because the file size, and your upload time, increase with each data rate you add, select only those target audiences you think are actually needed.

To make use of the *RealServer* option, the ISP hosting your web-site must have the RealServer software installed. If you are unsure, contact your ISP for confirmation, or use the standard *HTTP* option, which allows you to optimize playback for exactly one of the six *Target audience* options listed.

<p><b>Note:</b> GeoCities provides RealServers to their "homesteaders".</p>
---

**Target audience:** This selects the target audience modem connect speed. The lower the speed, the lower the quality of the video. If you wish your viewers to be able to view your movie as it loads, you should select a target audience rate that their modems can handle.

When you select a target audience, you are actually specifying a maximum bandwidth for your RealMedia stream. Bandwidth, measured in kilobits per second (Kbps), is the amount of data that can be sent through an Internet or network connection in a given time span. Standard modems (those that use ordinary telephone lines) are classified by the bandwidth they are able to process. Common values are 28.8 and 56 Kbps.

In addition to these standard audiences, you can record clips for connection speeds of 100 Kbps, 200 Kbps, or higher. These higher bandwidths are suitable for

audiences that use corporate Local Area Networks (LANs), cable modems or Digital Subscriber Line (DSL) modems.

---

## Make Windows Media file settings

---

The *Make Windows Media File* panel lets you adjust options for creating Windows Media Player files.

The screenshot shows the 'Make Windows Media File' dialog box. It is divided into several sections: 'Format', 'Data', 'Markers for Media Player "Go To Bar"', and 'Profile'.  
- **Format:** 'File Type' is set to 'Windows Media' and 'Preset' is set to 'Custom'.  
- **Data:** 'Title' is 'Thorkney's Birds', 'Author' is 'Thorkney Grillmarket', 'Copyright' is '© 2005 TG Productions', and 'Rating' is 'G'.  
- **Description:** 'The unearthly beauty of Thorkney's backyard bird sanctuary.'  
- **Markers for Media Player "Go To Bar":** Three radio buttons are present: 'No markers' (selected), 'Markers for every clip', and 'Markers for named clips only'.  
- **Profile:** A dropdown menu is set to 'Windows Media 8 Best Quality based VBR for Broadband.'. Below it, video settings are '320x240, 30 Frames/sec' and audio settings are 'WMA, 16 bit Stereo, 44.1 kHz'.

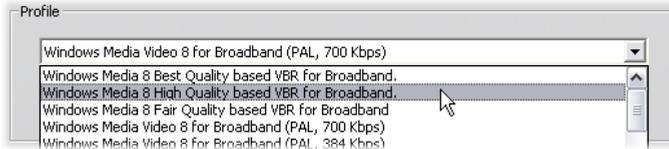
**Title, Author, Copyright:** These three fields are used to identify each Windows Media movie, and are encoded into it so they are not visible to the casual viewer.

**Description:** This 256-character field lets you enter keywords for encoding into the movie. It is typically used to identify the movie for Internet search engines.

**Rating:** Entering a rating in this field if it will be helpful to your viewers.

**Profile:** Choose the playback quality of your movie based on the capability of the target platform – the

computer(s) that will play the movie. The exact audio and video parameters corresponding to the current choice are displayed in the space below the list. The *Custom* option lets you fine-tune the settings by selecting from a list of possible combinations.



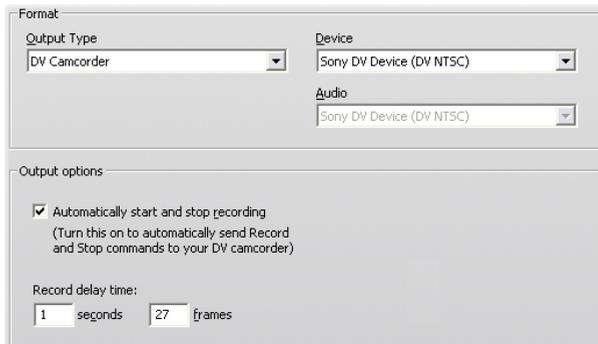
**Markers for Media Player “Go To” bar:** You have the option of including Windows Media “file markers” as you compress. These markers allow viewers to go directly to the beginning of any clip. The markers are listed by clip name. Clips you have not named get a Studio default clip name derived from the Project Name and the clip’s original timecode start point.

---

## Make tape settings

---

Studio automatically senses the hardware you have installed, and configures the Make Tape playback destination accordingly.



If you are *printing* (making tape) to a DV device, you can choose to have Studio start and stop the device automatically instead of having to do it yourself.

**To control printing automatically:**

1. Click the *Make Movie* button on the main menu bar. The upper half of the screen changes to display the Make Movie window.
2. Click the *Tape* tab.
3. Click the *Settings* button. The *Make tape* options panel opens.
4. Check the *Automatically start and stop recording* box to enable the automatic function.

With most DV devices there is a small delay between receiving the command to record and the actual start of recording. In Studio, this is referred to as the “record delay time”. It varies from device to device, so you may need to experiment with the value for best results with your particular device.

5. Click *OK*.
6. Click *Create*.

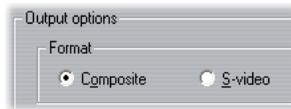
Studio renders your movie, then sends the *record* command to your DV device. Studio outputs the first frame of your movie (without audio) for the duration entered for record delay time, giving the device time to bring the tape up to speed and begin recording.

**Hint:** When you play back your tape, if the first part of your movie was not recorded, you should increase the *Record delay time* setting. On the other hand, if your movie begins by holding onto the first frame as though it were a still photograph, you should decrease the setting.

**Hint:** If you wish to send black to your recording device during its record delay time, place a blank title in the *video* track just before the start of your movie (a blank title is video black). If you wish to record black at the end of your movie, place a blank title in the *video* track following the final frame of your movie.

## Analog output

If you are printing to an analog device, the choice of *Composite* or *S-Video* format may be available if supported by your hardware.



## Output to the screen

One of the options on the *Video* dropdown in the *Playback devices* area is "VGA display". With this option, your completed project will be played back onto your monitor screen rather than to an external device.

## APPENDIX B:

---

# Tips and tricks

Here are some hints from Pinnacle technical specialists on choosing, using and maintaining a computer system with video in mind.

---

## Hardware

---

To use Studio effectively, your hardware should be optimally prepared and configured.

It is recommended that you use UDMA IDE drives as they provide reliable video transfer performance with Studio. We highly recommend you capture to a hard drive other than the one upon which Windows and the Studio software are installed.

Since recording video sequences in the DV format requires a data transfer rate of approximately 3.6 MB per second, your hard drive should maintain a performance level of at least 4 MB/s. Higher transfer rates will ensure reliability and help avoid problems with output to tape.

You can calculate the amount of hard drive space you'll need for your video using the 3.6 MB/sec value.

For example:

1 hour of video = 3600 seconds (60 x 60)

3600 seconds x 3.6 MB/s = 12,960 MB

Hence 1 hour of video uses 12.9 GB of storage.

Due to their automatic internal calibration, standard hard drives regularly interrupt the continuous data stream in order to recalibrate themselves. During capture, this is not apparent since images are temporarily stored in memory. But during playback, only a limited number of images can be temporarily stored in this manner.

For smooth playback, a continuous, uninterrupted data stream is required. If not, the image will “jerk” at regular intervals, even though all frames are present and even if the hard drive is very fast.

## Preparing your hard drive

Prior to capturing video, you should:

- Close background applications. Before opening your Studio product, hold down the Ctrl and Alt keys on the keyboard, then hit Delete. This will open the Close Program window. Click on the individual applications listed in the Close Program window and click the *End Task* button. Do this for all applications listed in the Close Program *except* Explorer and SysTray. Software utilities are available that can help with this procedure.
- Click on *Start* ➤ *Programs* ➤ *Accessories* ➤ *System Tools* ➤ *ScanDisk*  
Make sure *Thorough* is checked, and click *Start* (this may take a while).
- After ScanDisk is done, click on *Start* ➤ *Programs* ➤ *Accessories* ➤ *System Tools* ➤ *Disk Defragmenter* (this may take a while).

- Turn off energy-saving features. Point your mouse on your Desktop, right-click, and select *Properties* ➤ *Screensaver* (under *Energy... Settings*). Make sure everything under *Settings for... power schemes* is set to *Never*.

**Note:** Video-editing programs do not multitask very well. Do not use any other program while making movie (videotape or CD) or capturing. You *can* multitask while editing.

## RAM

The more RAM you have, the easier it is to work with Studio. You will need at least 512 MB of RAM to work with the Studio application, and we highly recommend 1 GB (or more).

## Motherboard

Intel Pentium or AMD Athlon 1.4 GHz or higher – the higher the better.

---

# Software

---

## Color depth adjustment

1. 16-bit color depth is recommended.
2. Position your mouse over your Desktop, right click, and select *Properties* ➤ *Settings*.
3. Under *Colors*, choose *High Color (16-bit)*.

The overlay settings affect only the display on the computer monitor, while recorded sequences will always appear in full color and resolution at the video output.

---

## Increasing the frame rate

---

If your system is unable to achieve an adequate frame rate (25 fps for PAL/SECAM, 29.97 fps for NTSC), try the ideas in the following paragraphs.

### **Deactivate network driver and applications**

Network operations may interrupt recording and playback. We recommend not working in a network.

### **Audio recording**

Record audio only when you actually need it, because sound requires a great deal of processor time during video recording. We recommend a PCI soundboard.

### **Digital video with audio**

When recording digital video sequences with audio, remember that the audio also takes up hard drive space:

- CD quality (44 kHz, 16-bit, stereo) requires about 172 KB/sec.;
- Stereo quality (22 kHz, 16-bit, stereo) about 86 KB/sec., and
- Mono quality (22 kHz, 8-bit, mono) still requires 22 KB/sec.

The better the sound quality, the more space is consumed. The highest quality (CD) is rarely required. However, the lowest quality (11 kHz/8-bit, mono) rarely provides acceptable audio sequences.

---

## Studio and computer animation

---

If you are editing computer animation with Studio or wish to combine animation with digital video, remember to create your animations using the same frame size and image refresh rate as your original video:

Quality	TV-Cropping	PAL	NTSC	Audio
DV	Yes	720 x 576	720 x 480	44 kHz 16-bit stereo

Failure to do this will result in unnecessarily long rendering times and the possibility of visible flaws when the animation is played back.



# Troubleshooting

Before you begin troubleshooting, take some time to check your hardware and software installation.

**Update your software:** We recommend installing the latest operating system updates for Windows XP. You can download these updates from:

[windowsupdate.microsoft.com/default.htm](http://windowsupdate.microsoft.com/default.htm)

Make sure you have the latest version of the Studio software installed by clicking the *Help* ➤ *Software Updates* menu from within the program. Studio will use the Internet to check for possible updates.

**Check your hardware:** Ensure that all installed hardware is functioning normally with the latest drivers, and is not flagged as having a problem in the Windows Device Manager (see below). If any devices are flagged you should resolve the issue before starting installation.

**Get the latest drivers:** We also highly recommend installing the latest drivers for your sound card and graphics card. During the Studio software launch process we do verify that your sound card and video card support DirectX.

Go to the manufacturers' web-sites to get the latest drivers for your sound and graphics cards. Many users

have NVIDIA or ATI graphics cards, for which the latest drivers are available at:

[www.nvidia.com](http://www.nvidia.com) and [www.atitech.com](http://www.atitech.com)

Those with Sound Blaster audio cards can get updates here:

[us.creative.com](http://us.creative.com)

## Opening Device Manager

The Windows XP Device Manager, which lets you configure your system's hardware, has an important role in troubleshooting.

The first step in accessing Device Manager is to right-click on *My Computer*, then select *Properties* from the context menu. This opens the System Properties dialog. The *Device Manager* button is on the *Hardware* tab.



## TECHNICAL HELP ON-LINE

The Pinnacle Support Knowledge Base is a searchable archive of thousands of regularly-updated articles about the most common questions and issues users have regarding Studio and other Pinnacle products. Use the knowledge base to find answers to any questions you may have about installing, using or troubleshooting Pinnacle Studio.

Access the knowledge base with your web browser by visiting:

<http://www.pcle.com/selfhelp>

The knowledge base home page will appear. You don't have to register to browse the knowledge base, but if you want to send a specific question to technical support staff you will need to create a knowledge base account. Please read any knowledge base articles relevant to your inquiry before contacting technical support.

## Using the knowledge base

In the *Product* dropdown, select “Studio Version 10”. If appropriate, you can also select a *Sub-Product*, a *Category*, or both. Selecting a sub-product or category may reduce the number of irrelevant hits you will get from your search, but may also eliminate helpful articles of a more general nature. If you're not sure what category to pick, leave the selection at *All Categories*.

To search for an article, type a short phrase or group of keywords in the text box. Don't get too wordy; the search works best when given just a few words.

## Search example

In the list below of common troubleshooting issues, the first item is, “Studio crashes or hangs in Edit mode”.

Type “Crash in edit mode” in the search box and click the *Search* button. You should get back somewhere between 60 and 150 hits. The very first one, “Studio crashes in Edit”, lists the known causes for this issue and their remedies.

If you search instead on the single keyword “Crash”, you will get far fewer hits, all relating to crashes in Studio.

If one search does not turn up an article that seems relevant to your problem, try modifying the search by choosing a different set of keywords. You can also use the *Search by* and *Sort by* options to select for specific or popular articles.

## Searching by Answer ID

If you know the Answer ID number of the answer you're looking for, you can access the item directly. For example, if you are getting a capture error when you press the *Capture* button, someone might refer you to knowledge base article 2687, "I am getting a capture error with Studio". In the *Search by* dropdown, select "Answer ID", enter the ID number in the text box, and click *Search*.

## Top knowledge-base search issues

1. Studio crashes in Edit mode (ID 6786).
2. Capture error appears when attempting to start capture (ID 2687).
3. Studio hangs when rendering (ID 6386).
4. CD or DVD burner is not detected (ID 1593).
5. Studio hangs on launch or does not launch (ID 1596).
6. HollywoodFX transitions are still watermarked after upgrading (ID 1804).
7. "Cannot initialize the DV capture device" error appears in Capture mode (ID 2716).

The information on the following pages is based on these often-viewed knowledge base articles.

---

## Studio crashes in Edit mode

---

### *Answer ID 6786*

If Studio is crashing, the cause is most likely either a configuration issue or a problem with a project or content file. This type of issue can often be fixed with one of the following methods:

- Uninstalling and reinstalling Studio.
- Optimizing the computer.
- Rebuilding a corrupt project.
- Recapturing a corrupt clip.

To help troubleshoot the problem, determine which of the failure modes listed below best matches the symptoms you are experiencing, then refer to the corresponding set of instructions:

- **Case 1:** Studio crashes randomly. There doesn't seem to be any one thing that will cause the crash, but crashes happen frequently.
- **Case 2:** Studio crashes every time you click on some particular tab or button within Edit mode.
- **Case 3:** Studio crashes each time you carry out some specific sequence of steps.

### **Case 1: Studio crashes randomly**

Try each of the following solutions in turn:

**Get the latest version of Studio:** Make sure that you have the latest version of Studio 10 installed. The latest version can be found on our website at:

<http://www.pinnaclesys.com/support/studio10>

Be sure to close all other programs before installing a new version.

**Adjust Studio settings:** Choose *No background rendering* in the *Rendering* dropdown list, and clear the *Use hardware acceleration* checkbox. Both options are found on the *Edit* options panel (see page 253).

**End background tasks:** Close other applications and unload any background processes before using Studio.

Press Ctrl+Alt+Delete to open the Task Manager. You probably won't see much under the *Applications* tab, but the *Processes* tab will show you the software that is currently running. It can be difficult to be sure which processes should not be closed, but software utilities are available that can assist with this procedure.

**Defragment your hard drive:** Over time, the files on your hard drive can become *fragmented* (stored in multiple parts in different areas of the drive), which slows down access and may lead to performance problems. Use a disk defragmenter utility like the one supplied with Windows to prevent or correct this problem. Access the built-in defragmenter with the *Disk defragmenter* command on your *Programs* ➤ *Accessories* ➤ *System tools* menu.

**Update audio and video drivers:** Make sure that you have obtained the latest drivers for your sound and video cards from their manufacturers' web-sites. You can see what sound and video cards you have in the Windows Device Manager.

To determine what video card you have, click the plus sign in front of *Display Adapters* in the Device Manager list. The name of your video card is now displayed. Double-clicking the name opens another dialog, where you choose the *Driver* tab. Now you can

view information about the driver's manufacturer, and the names of the driver's constituent files.

The sound card is displayed in the *Sound, video and game controllers* section of Device Manager. Again, double-clicking the name lets you access the driver details.

**Update Windows:** Make sure you have all the latest Windows updates that are available.

**“Adjust for best performance”:** Use this system option to turn off visual extras that consume additional CPU time. Right-click *My Computer*, select *Properties* from the context menu, then click on the *Advanced* tab. Under *Performance*, click the *Settings* button to open the Performance Options dialog. Select the *Adjust for best performance* option and click *OK*.

**Update DirectX:** Update to the latest version of DirectX. You can download it from Microsoft here:

[www.microsoft.com/windows/directx](http://www.microsoft.com/windows/directx)

**Open up space on your boot drive:** Make sure you have 10 GB or more free space on your boot drive for paging.

**Uninstall, reinstall and update Studio:** In case your Studio installation has become corrupted, try this procedure:

1. Uninstall Studio: Click on *Start* ➤ *Programs* ➤ *Studio 10* ➤ *Tools* ➤ *Uninstall Studio 10*, then follow any on-screen instructions until the process is complete. If the uninstaller asks whether you want to delete a shared files, click *Yes to all*. Disconnect the camera and cable from your DV board, if you have one.

2. **Reinstall Studio:** Insert your Studio CD and reinstall the software. Make sure you are logged in as the Administrator (or as a user with Admin privileges) when installing Studio. It is strongly recommended that Studio be installed in its default directory on the main OS drive.
3. **Download and install the latest version of Studio:** Click the *Help* ➤ *Software Updates* menu command to check for updates. If a new version of Studio is detected on our web-site, you will be asked to download it. Download this *patch file* to a location where you can find it easily (such as the Desktop), then exit Studio. Finally, double-click the downloaded file to update Studio.

**Rebuild corrupt project:** Try rebuilding the first few minutes of your project. If no problems occur, gradually add to the project, checking periodically to ensure that system stability is maintained.

**Fix corrupt video or audio:** Sometimes the instability may occur only when you manipulate certain audio or video clips. In such cases, you should recapture the audio or video. If the audio or video was created by another application, recapture it with Studio if possible. While Studio supports many video formats, the particular clip you have may be corrupt or in an uncommon format. If you have a **wav** or **mp3** file that seems to be problematic, convert the file to the other format before importing the file. Many **wav** and **mp3** files on the Internet are corrupt or non-standard..

**Reinstall Windows:** This is quite a drastic step, but if the previous steps have not helped, Windows itself may be corrupt. Even though your other applications may appear to be running properly, the size of the video

files used in Studio may well tax your system to the point that a latent instability is revealed.

## **Case 2: Clicking a tab or button crashes Studio**

Please start by trying the steps given above for Case 1. This kind of problem often means that Studio was not installed properly or has become corrupt. Uninstalling Studio, reinstalling it, and patching to the latest version will generally solve the difficulty.

Otherwise, try creating a new project called “test01.stu” to try to determine if the failure is specific to a particular project. Open the demo video file and drag the first few scenes onto the Timeline. Now click on the tab or button that seems to cause the failure.

If this test project does not crash, it may be that the problem is with the project you are working on rather than with Studio or your system.

If the test project does fail, please contact our support staff and provide us with the details on the exact failure mode. We will try to recreate and solve the problem.

## **Case 3: Performing certain steps crashes Studio**

This is just a more complicated version of Case 2, and the same troubleshooting steps apply.

Since it may be quite difficult to determine the exact sequence of steps that produces the failure, you will need to be methodical in your approach. Creating a small test project, as described for Case 2, helps eliminate variables that may confuse your test results.

---

## Capture error occurs on starting capture

---

### *Answer ID 2687*

Some problems can be traced to incompatibilities or issues with particular third-party capture cards:

- ATI: Studio should work with most All In Wonder cards.
- Hauppauge: Please see the FAQ on our web site for information regarding Hauppauge cards.
- nVidia: Studio should work with most nVidia card that are designed for video capture.

### **Troubleshooting steps**

The initial goal, before you capture, is to see video playing in the preview window.

1. Check capture source settings in Studio. Since you may have more than one capture device in your system (1394 cards, TV tuners, webcams, etc.) you must be sure to select the correct capture source. In Studio's Capture Mode, click the *Settings* button, then click the *Capture Source* tab on the Setup Options dialog. Select your video capture device on the *Video* dropdown list.

If the option for your desired capture device is not listed then go to the Windows Device Manager. If the capture driver for your capture device is flagged or not listed, reload the capture driver as follows:

- Pinnacle drivers: Use the CD to locate and install the Pinnacle drivers for the card you have installed.
- Third party drivers: Use the CD that came with the capture device or call the manufacturer (or visit their web-site) for the most current driver.

2. If you are capturing from an analog source, make sure the correct analog type is selected. In the Diskometer window (in Studio's Capture mode), click the left tab to open the fly-out panel of analog video settings. Select *Composite* or *S-Video*.  
If the correct item is already selected, select the other one, then toggle back to the correct one after a few seconds. This can help reset Capture mode to properly detect the input signal.
3. If you are capturing from an analog source, check your cabling. It should match the *Composite* or *S-Video* setting you selected above. If possible, try a different cable, tape and VCR to see if the problem can be traced to one of those components.
4. Make sure the player heads are clean, and that the tape is in good condition. Make sure all physical connections are secure.
5. If you are capturing from an analog source, you will need to press the *play* button on the source deck before capturing – there are no on-screen controls. If your player is not playing when you click the *Capture* button, you will get a Capture Error.

If you continue to get a Capture Error after trying the above steps, please test your setup with the AMCAP capture application. AMCAP is a generic application used to test device compatibility. If you can't capture with AMCAP, your capture card probably doesn't have the right driver for your version of Windows.

#### **To use AMCAP:**

1. Click Start ➤ Programs ➤ Studio 10 ➤ Tools ➤ Am Capture.
2. In the AMCAP window, select your capture device on the *Devices* menu.

3. Clicking the *Options* ➤ *Preview* menu command should show video in the AMCAP window if the cabling is correct and the source (camcorder, VCR, etc.) is turned on. To capture, click on the *Capture* menu and select *Start Capture*. There may be some selections for setting up your capture card.

**Note:** AMCAP will not work with capture devices that have hardware MPEG encoders (e.g., MovieBox USB, PCTV Deluxe, MP20, and the TDK Indi device).

In the unlikely event that you cannot capture in Studio with your capture card even after all troubleshooting steps have been tried, you can work around the problem by capturing outside of Studio then importing the captured video into Studio for editing and output.

---

## Studio hangs when rendering

---

### *Answer ID 6386*

With this type of problem, Studio “gets stuck” during rendering (preparing your video for output in Make Movie mode). To identify the solution in a particular case, try the troubleshooting steps for whichever of the following failure modes best matches your situation:

- **Case 1:** Rendering stops immediately after it starts.
- **Case 2:** Rendering stops randomly in a project. It typically does not stop in the same spot if rendering is attempted multiple times.
- **Case 3:** Render stops at the same spot in a project no matter how many times rendering is attempted. This failure mode has more than one possible cause.

## Case 1: Rendering stops immediately

If the hang occurs immediately upon clicking the *Create* button, there is some configuration problem on your system. Try rendering the supplied demo video. If this fails, the problem is confirmed as a system issue, since we have not been able to reproduce a render problem with the demo file during our in-house testing.

### Possible solutions:

- Uninstall and reinstall Studio.
- Uninstall other software that might conflict with Studio (other video editing software, other video codecs, etc.).
- Make sure that you have installed any available Windows service packs.
- Reinstall Windows over itself (that is, *without* uninstalling first). In Windows XP, this procedure is called *Repair*.

## Case 2: Rendering stops randomly

If the render hangs at random points even within the same project, the failures may be due to background tasks, power management or a thermal problem in the computer.

### Possible solutions:

- Check your hard drive for errors and defragment it.
- End any background tasks, such as virus checkers, drive indexers and fax modems.
- Turn off any power management.
- Install cooling fans in the computer case.

### **Case 3: Render always stops at the same point**

If rendering always hangs at the same spot in a particular project, see if other projects have the same problem. If not, the problem project could be corrupt; if they do, try to isolate a common factor.

Finding a solution to this type of failure is much easier if you can identify a particular item in the project that is causing the rendering to stop. Removing the item or trimming it may allow the rendering to complete, though in some cases the failure may simply turn up elsewhere in the project.

#### **Some possible solutions and workarounds:**

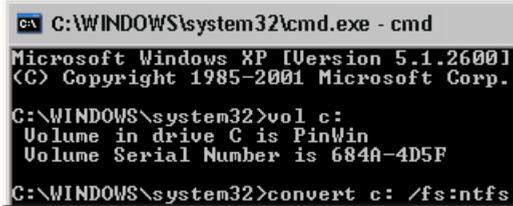
1. Look at the clips in the project for corrupt video frames. These may show up as gray, black, blocky or distorted frames. If you find any, trim the clip to exclude the offending frames. You could also try recapturing the footage.
2. Defragment your hard drive.
3. Ensure that you have ample storage – preferably tens of gigabytes – on the hard drive you use for video. Rendering may use large amounts of storage, and can be disrupted if space is insufficient.
4. If you have a separate capture drive, make sure to move the auxiliary files folder to that drive.
5. Copy the section where the render stops and put it into a new project. Include 15 to 30 seconds on either side of the error. Try rendering this excerpt to an AVI file and, if successful, use the file to replace the offending section of the original project.

6. Render the entire project to an AVI file, then create a new project and import the file. If you are making a disc, you will need to add your chapter marks and menus to the new project. This workaround works best with NTFS partitions to avoid the 4 GB file limit in FAT32 partitions (allowing only 18 minutes of DV video).

It is possible to convert an existing FAT32 hard drive partition to NTFS without reformatting, and so avoid the 4 GB file-size limitation. The following procedure is for the **c:** drive. For other partitions, simply substitute the correct drive letter (e.g. **d** or **f**) in steps 4 and 5.

### To convert a FAT32 partition to NTFS:

1. Click the Windows *Start* button.
2. Select the *Run...* command.
3. Type **cmd** into the *Run* dialog, and click *OK*.  
A command window appears.
4. Type **vol c:** at the prompt, press Enter, and note the displayed volume label (“PinWin” in the illustration below).
5. Type **convert c: /fs:ntfs** and press Enter.



```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe - cmd
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600]
(C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.

C:\WINDOWS\system32>vol c:
Volume in drive C is PinWin
Volume Serial Number is 684A-4D5F

C:\WINDOWS\system32>convert c: /fs:ntfs
```

This initiates the conversion from FAT32 to NTFS. When prompted, enter the volume label noted in the previous step.

---

## CD or DVD burner is not detected

---

### *Answer ID 1593*

If Studio cannot locate your disc burner when you want to create your disc project, you should get the error message, “No disc writer device found!” It may be either Studio or Windows that is failing to recognize the drive. If it occurs following the installation of a patch to Studio, it is likely that the patching process did not work correctly; in that case, uninstall, reinstall and update Studio as described in item 2 below.

### **Some possible solutions and workarounds:**

1. Verify that the burner is listed in Device Manager. If it is not, review your burner’s documentation or contact the manufacturer to get the device installed properly.
2. Uninstall and reinstall Studio from your original CD, then update it with the most recent patch. See page 289 for instructions.
3. Check the disc burner manufacturer's web-site for a firmware update. You can find the firmware version for your burner on its properties dialog in Device Manager.
4. In Device Manager again, check the hard drive controller to see if it is a VIA controller. VIA’s web-site is:  
[www.viaarena.com/?PageID=2](http://www.viaarena.com/?PageID=2)
5. If you have other disc burning software, such as Nero, Adaptec or Roxio Easy CD Creator, try upgrading that software to the latest version. If Studio still can’t detect the drive, uninstall the other disc burning software and try again.

---

## Studio hangs on launch or won't launch

---

### *Answer ID 1596*

Problems on launch can manifest in various ways. Studio may give an error message when launching, or it may freeze in mid-launch, or it may “hang” – fail to return control to you – after what had seemed an uneventful launch.

### **In all such cases, try any or all the following:**

1. Restart the computer. After the reboot, double-click the Studio icon.
2. Wait a few minutes to confirm that the application is really hung. Even when you suspect Studio has failed to launch, wait a few minutes more just in case. On some computers, the launch process may take longer to complete than you anticipate.
3. Uninstall and reinstall Studio. (See page 289 for instructions.)
4. Download and reinstall the driver for your sound card. Remember that the sound card must support DirectX.
5. Remove the sound card from the system. Some older sound cards may not work well with newer versions of Windows. This can be verified by shutting down the computer, removing the sound card and restarting. If Studio now launches, you probably need to replace the sound card (assuming you have updated to the latest drivers as suggested in the previous step).
6. Download and reinstall the software for the graphics card. Remember that the card must support DirectX.

---

## “Cannot initialize the DV capture device” error appears in Capture mode

---

### *Answer ID 2716*

The error message reads in full: “Pinnacle Studio cannot initialize the DV capture device. Please ensure that the camcorder is connected and the power is on.”

This error message occurs only when you are capturing from a digital source (DV or Digital8 camcorder) plugged into the DV port (also called a “FireWire” or “1394” port).

### **If you are capturing from an analog source:**

- You need to correct your capture source setting. In the *Capture devices* box on the *Capture source* options dialog, notice that *Video* and *Audio* are set to “DV Camcorder – Pinnacle 1394”, the default setting. To capture from an analog source, select the applicable devices in both lists.
- Many analog capture cards lack an *audio in* jack, so you must both set the audio capture device in Studio to your sound card's *line in*, and cable the analog audio source (VCR or analog camcorder) to the *line in* jack on the sound card.

### **Possible solutions if you are capturing from a digital source:**

1. Verify that the camera is in VTR/VCR mode. For capturing, the device should be running on AC power, not batteries.
2. Disconnect and reconnect the 1394 cable. Make sure you are not mistakenly using a USB cable

connected to a USB port. Studio will not capture from a DV or Digital8 camcorder unless it is connected via the DV port.

3. Turn the camcorder off then back on. The mouse pointer should briefly turn to an hourglass when you turn on the camcorder as the device is detected and Windows loads the driver. By default, Windows XP will display a message when the power to the camcorder is cycled.
4. Shut down the computer and move the 1394 capture card into another PCI slot. If you don't have an available slot, swap the capture card with a card in a different slot. Restart the computer.

The Windows hardware wizard should detect the “new” hardware automatically. Follow any on-screen instructions to finish loading the driver if any appear. Check Device Manager to see if the driver loaded properly.

5. Verify that the 1394 port and the DV/D8 camcorder drivers are both loaded properly in Device Manager. See “Checking the drivers” immediately below.

## Checking the drivers

### To check your 1394 and DV drivers:

1. Open the Windows Device Manager. (See page 284 for instructions on accessing Device Manager.)
2. You should not have any drivers with the yellow exclamation mark error flag  on them. If you do, the driver that is flagged is not loaded properly and will not work correctly.
3. The driver for the card is an OHCI-compliant IEEE-1394 host controller driver and is listed under the heading *IEEE 1394 Bus host controllers*.

4. The driver for the camcorder, when loaded properly, is listed under the heading *Imaging Devices*.

Click the *Uninstall* button  in the Device Manager toolbar, then the *Scan for hardware changes* button .

5. The driver should reload properly. It should not need to ask for the Windows CD, but if it does, follow the on-screen instructions.

### **If no error flags are displayed...**

Both drivers may be present without any error flags. We recommend that you then uninstall and reload both drivers as follows:

1. Uninstall the DV camcorder driver.
2. Disconnect your DV or Digital8 camcorder from the 1394 port.
3. Uninstall the OHCI-compliant 1394 host controller driver.
4. Reinstall the host controller driver.
5. Reconnect your DV or Digital8 camcorder.

Your camcorder should be automatically redetected and the driver reloaded.

### **Repairing your Windows installation**

If you continue to get the “cannot initialize” message after trying all the steps above, it may be that the 1394 drivers built into Windows are corrupt. We recommend that you reinstall Windows on top of itself (i.e. *without* uninstalling first). For this you will need to run the Windows installer from your original Windows CD. In XP, this procedure is called *Repair*. We recommend that you contact your computer manufacturer for help if required.



## INSTALLATION PROBLEMS

### I am getting an error installing Studio from CD

**Solution 1:** Restart the computer. After the computer has finished restarting, try to install Studio again.

**Solution 2:** Inspect the CD for scratches, fingerprints or smudges. Clean off the CD with a soft cloth if necessary. Install Studio again.

**Solution 3:** End background tasks. Here's how:

Use the *End Process* button in the Windows Task Manager, or use one of the available software utilities designed to assist with this procedure.

### To keep applications from loading when your PC is started (or rebooted):

1. Click on *Start* ➤ *Run*
2. In the Open box, type: **msconfig**
3. Click *OK*

In the System Configuration Utility window, click on the far right tab called *Startup*. Remove all checks from the boxes except for Explorer and System Tray (SysTray.exe).

### Hardware not found during installation.

**Possible cause:** The PCI slot in which the hardware is installed was not assigned an IRQ in the BIOS or it may be sharing an IRQ with another device. It may also be that the card is not seated completely into the PCI slot.

**Solution:** Try reseating the card in its original slot or in a different one. In most cases, you may be able to get a different IRQ assignment by simply shutting off the computer and installing the DV card or other hardware in another slot.



## OPERATION PROBLEMS

### **Images are missing from the recording, or the video is jerky.**

**Possible cause:** Your hard drive's transfer speed is too low.

**Solution:** When working with some UDMA hard drives, the playback may “jump” when an AVI file is played back at higher data rates. This can be traced back to the fact that the hard drive carries out a recalibration while reading the file, thus interrupting playback.

This problem is not caused by Studio, but is the result of the manner in which the hard drive operates and interacts with other system components.

There are several solutions you can use to increase the speed of your hard drive:

1. End task on background applications. Before opening your Studio product, hold down the Ctrl and Alt keys on the keyboard, then hit the Delete

key. This will open the Close Program window. Click on the individual applications listed in the Close Program window and select *End Task*. Do this for all applications listed in the Close Program window *except* Explorer and SysTray.

2. Click on *Start* ➤ *Programs* ➤ *Accessories* ➤ *System Tools* ➤ *ScanDisk*.
3. Make sure *Thorough* is checked, and click *Start* (this may take a while).
4. After ScanDisk is done, click on *Start* ➤ *Programs* ➤ *Accessories* ➤ *System Tools* ➤ *Disk Defragmenter* (this may take a while).
5. Turn off energy-saving features (right-click on your Desktop and select *Properties* ➤ *Screensaver* (under *Energy... Settings*). Make sure everything under *Settings for... power schemes* is set to *Never*.
6. Go to *Start* ➤ *Settings* ➤ *Control Panel* ➤ *System*. Click on the *Performance* tab, then *File System*, then the *Troubleshooting* tab.
7. Click to the left of the *Disable write-behind caching for all drives* option to select it and click *OK*.
8. Under the hard-disk tab, set the *Read-ahead optimization* option to *None*.

In general, this will result in an increase in the data transfer rate. **Caution:** In some hard drives, it can result in a decrease in the write rate!

**Note:** Video-editing programs do not multitask very well. Do not use any other program while making movie (videotape or CD) or capturing. You can multitask while editing.

## There is no video in the Player preview.

**Solution 1:** Change video resolution and/or color depth on the Display Properties dialog:

1. Right-click your Desktop and select *Properties*, then click the *Settings* tab on the dialog.
2. Under *Colors*, try each of 16-bit, 24-bit and 32-bit.
3. Under *Screen resolution*, again try each available setting from *800x600* upwards.

**Solution 2:** You may be using either a generic Windows graphics card driver or an older version of your graphics card. Your graphics card driver may also be corrupt. Please contact your graphics card vendor to ensure you have properly installed the most current driver. Reinstall your graphics driver with the help of your video card manufacturer's technical support, or download and install the latest driver from the manufacturer's web-site.

**Solution 3:** You may not have DirectX installed properly. Go to *Start* ➤ *Programs* ➤ *Studio* ➤ *Help* ➤ *DirectX Diagnostic Tool*. On the *Display* tab, click the *Test* button next to Direct Draw. After running that test, run the Direct 3D test. If your card fails either of these tests, please contact your graphics card vendor for support.

**Note:** Please visit our web-site for additional help with troubleshooting DirectX issues, include specific solutions for particular capture hardware.

## When I output to tape the video and/or audio stutters or is absent.

**Background:** There are many possible causes for this kind of problem. To understand why, consider that the

data coming from and flowing to your camera is vulnerable to interference at any stage along its journey.

Digital data travels from the camcorder through the IEEE-1394 cable, into the 1394 card and onto the system main board. It now crosses to the hard drive cable and up to the hard drive, where it is finally recorded. Outflowing data makes the same trip in reverse. Any process that disrupts or delays the flow of data at any point is a potential source of video output problems.

**Solution 1:** Make sure that you are losing *no* frames during video capture. Dropped frames during capture may result in problems during output as well. Capture problems have a different set of troubleshooting options. See the Pinnacle knowledge base on our web site at:

[www.pinnaclesys.com/support/studio9](http://www.pinnaclesys.com/support/studio9)

**Solution 2:** Save your current project, close all your applications, and restart the system. When Windows comes back, open your project in Studio without running any other programs, and try to output to tape. If the issues persist, try the next solution.

**Solution 3:** Tune your system:

- Remove wallpaper from the Desktop.
- Remove temporary Internet files from the system and empty the Recycle Bin.
- Check the system for viruses.
- Turn off any screen savers, and disable any power-saving features of the operating system or the BIOS. Most power-saving features can be accessed via the *Power Options* icon in Control Panel.

- Some systems have further power-saving features that can only be disabled in the BIOS. Please refer to your system's documentation for more information.
- Some USB devices – scanners, webcams etc. – can interfere with other types of software including video-editing applications like Studio. As a troubleshooting measure, these devices should be temporarily removed.

**Solution 4:** Improve hard drive efficiency.

- **Use a separate capture hard drive:** When working with digital video, the use of a second, separate hard-drive for captured video data is recommended. This eliminates the problem of Windows competing with Studio for the capture drive – for instance, when it updates the system swap file.
- **Defragment the hard drive:** Hard drives become “fragmented” with use, meaning that files are stored inefficiently in small chunks rather than as a single block. This can slow file access significantly, so it is important to defragment the hard drive on a regular basis. The Disk Defragmenter utility can be found in the *Accessories* ➤ *System Tools* folder on the *Start* menu of most Windows installations.
- **Check hard drive data rates:** The Pinnacle video-editing software has a built-in test that measures the speed at which the capture drive transfers data. If the drive is not running at optimum performance levels, some video-editing operations may fail.

**To run the hard drive data transfer rate test:**

- Click on *Setup* ➤ *Capture Source*. In the lower right of the setup box, click the *Test Data Rate* button.  
The hard drive test will run. On most systems, data rates will be between 25,000 and 35,000 Kbytes/sec.

**Note:** If you make changes to the system that increase the speed of the capture hard drive – such as enabling DMA – you will need to run the hard drive data rate test again so that the software will recognize the change.

**Solution 5:** Use our PPE utility.

Use Pinnacle's PCI Performance Enhancer utility, which is installed on the *Tools* submenu under Studio's entry on your *Start* ➤ *Programs* menu.

**Solution 6:** Update the hard drive controller driver.

In Device Manager, check the hard drive controller to see if it is a Via controller. If it is, get a driver update from the vendor's web-site:

[www.viaarena.com/?PageID=2](http://www.viaarena.com/?PageID=2)



## APPENDIX D:

---

# Videography tips

To shoot good video, then create from it an interesting, exciting or informative movie, is something anyone with a little basic knowledge can achieve. Starting from a rough script or shooting plan, the first step is to shoot your raw video. Even at that stage, you should be looking ahead to the editing phase by making sure you will have a good set of shots to work from.

Editing a movie involves juggling all your fragments of footage into some kind of harmonious whole. It means deciding on the particular techniques, transitions and effects that will best express your intent. An important part of editing is the creation of a soundtrack. The right sound – dialog, music, commentary or effect – can work with the visuals to create a whole greater than the sum of its parts.

Studio provides the tools to create professional-quality home video. The rest is up you – the videographer.

---

## Creating a shooting plan

---

It is not always necessary to have a shooting plan, but it can be very helpful for large video projects. The plan

can be as simple or as complex as you like. A simple list of planned scenes might be enough, or you might also want to include some notes regarding detailed camera directions or prepared dialog. The really ambitious can go all the way to a full-fledged script in which every single camera angle is described in detail along with notes about duration, lighting and props.

**Title: “Jack on the kart track”**

No.	Camera angle	Text / Audio	Duration	Date
1	Jack's face with helmet, camera zooms out	“Jack is driving his first race...”. Noise of engines in the background.	11 sec	Tue. 06/22
2	On the starting line, driver's perspective; low camera position.	Music is played in the hall, noise of engines.	8 sec	Tue. 06/22
3	Man with a starting flag is accompanied into the scene to the start position. Camera stays, man goes out of the scene after start.	“Let's go...”. Carry out the start, add starting signal.	12 sec	Tue. 06/22
4	Jack on the start position from the front, camera follows, shows Jack up to the bend, now from behind.	Music from the hall no longer audible, fade up same music from CD over noise of engines.	9 sec	Tue. 06/22
5	...			

*Draft of a simple shooting plan*

---

## Editing

---

### Using varying perspectives

An important event should always be shot from varying perspectives and camera positions. Later, during editing, you can use the best camera angles alone or in

combination. Make a conscious effort to tape events from more than one camera angle (first the clown in the circus ring, but then also the laughing spectator from the clown's point of view). Interesting events can also take place behind the protagonists or the protagonists may be seen in a reverse angle. This can be helpful later when trying to establish a sense of balance in the movie.

## **Close-ups**

Don't be stingy with close-ups of important things or persons. Close-ups usually look better and more interesting than long shots do on a television screen, and they work well in post-production effects.

## **Long shots / Semi-long shots**

Long shots provide the viewer with an overview and establish the scene of the action. However, these shots can also be used to tighten longer scenes. When you cut from a close-up to a long shot, the viewer no longer sees the details, and it is thus easier to make a chronological jump. Showing a spectator in a semi-long shot can also provide visual relief from the main action, and the opportunity of a transition away from the action if desired.

## **Complete actions**

Always shoot complete actions with a beginning and an end. This makes editing easier.

## **Transitions**

Cinematic timing requires some practice. It is not always possible to film long events in their entirety,

and in movies they often have to be represented in severely abbreviated form. Nonetheless, the plot should remain logical and cuts should almost never call attention to themselves.

This is where the transition from one scene to the next is important. Even if the action in neighboring scenes is separated in time or space, your editorial choices can make the juxtaposition so smooth that the viewer bridges the gap without conscious attention.

The secret to a successful transition is establishing an easily-felt connection between the two scenes. In a *plot-related* transition, the connection is that of successive events in an unfolding story. For example, a shot of a new car might be used to introduce a documentary about its design and production.

A *neutral* transition doesn't in itself imply a story development or a change of time or place, but can be used to smoothly connect different excerpts from a scene. For example, cutting away to an interested audience member during a podium discussion lets you then cut back unobtrusively to a later point in the same discussion, omitting the part between.

*External* transitions show something apart from the action. For example, during a shot inside the marriage registry, you might cut to the exterior of the marriage registry, where a surprise is already being set up.

Transitions should underscore the message of the film and must always fit the respective situation, in order to avoid confusing viewers or distracting from the actual storyline.

## **Logical sequence of action**

The shots strung together during editing must interact appropriately in relation to the action. Viewers will be

unable to follow the events unless the storyline is logical. Capture viewer interest from the very beginning with a fast-paced or spectacular start and maintain that interest until the very end. Viewers can lose interest or become disoriented if scenes are strung together in a manner that is illogical or chronologically false, or if scenes are too hectic or short (under three seconds). There should be some continuity of motif from one scene to the next.

### **Bridging the gaps**

Make an effort to bridge the gaps from one filming location to another. You can use close-ups, for example, to bridge chronological jumps, zooming in on the face, then back out after a few seconds onto a different scene.

### **Maintain continuity**

Continuity – consistency of detail from one scene to the next – is vital in providing a satisfying viewing experience. Sunny weather does not fit with spectators who opened their umbrellas.

### **Tempo of cuts**

The tempo at which a film cuts from one scene to the next often influences the message and mood of the film. The absence of an expected shot and the duration of a shot are both ways of manipulating the message of the film.

### **Avoid visual disjunctions**

Stringing together similar shots in succession may result in visual disjunctions. A person may be in the left

half of the frame one moment and in the right half of the frame the next, or may appear first with and then without eyeglasses.

### **Do not string together pan shots**

Pan shots should not be strung together unless they have the same direction and tempo.

---

## **Rules of thumb for video editing**

---

Here are some guidelines that may be helpful when you come to edit your movie. Of course, there are no hard and fast rules, especially if your work is humorous or experimental.

- Do not string together scenes in which the camera is moving. Pans, zooms, and other moving shots should always be separated by static shots.
- Shots that follow one another should be from different camera positions. The camera angle should vary by at least 45 degrees.
- Sequences of faces should always be shot alternately from varying angles of view.
- Change perspectives when shooting buildings. When you have similar shots of the same type and size, the picture diagonal should alternate between front left to rear right and vice versa.
- Make cuts when persons are in motion. The viewer will be distracted by the ongoing motion and the cut will go almost without notice. In particular, you can cut to a long shot from the middle of the motion.
- Make harmonious cuts; avoid visual disjunction.

- The less motion there is in a shot, the shorter it should be. Shots with fast movements can be longer.
- Long shots have more content, so they should also be shown longer.

Ordering your video sequences in a deliberate manner not only permits you to produce certain effects, but even enables you to convey messages that cannot or should not be shown in pictures. There are basically six methods of conveying messages through cuts:

### **Associative cuts**

Shots are strung together in a certain order to trigger associations in the mind of the viewer, but the actual message is not shown. Example: A man bets on a horse race and, in very next scene, we see him shopping for an expensive new car at a car dealership.

### **Parallel cuts**

Two actions are shown in parallel. The film jumps back and forth between the two actions; making the shots shorter and shorter until the end. This is a way of building suspense until it peaks. Example: Two different cars drive from different directions at high speed toward the same intersection.

### **Contrast cuts**

The film purposely cuts unexpectedly from one shot to another, very different shot, in order to point up the contrast to the viewer. Example: A tourist lying on the beach; the next shot shows starving children.

### **Substitutionary cut**

Events that cannot or should not be shown are replaced by other events (a child is born, but instead of childbirth, the blossoming of a flower bud is shown).

## **Cause and effect cuts**

Shots are related by virtue of cause and effect: without the first shot, the second would be incomprehensible. Example: A man fights with his wife and, in the very next shot, winds up sleeping under a bridge.

## **Formal cuts**

Shots that vary in content can be strung together if they have something in common – the same shapes, colors, or motions, for example. Examples: A crystal ball and the earth; a yellow raincoat and yellow flowers; a falling skydiver and a falling feather.

---

# **Soundtrack production**

---

Soundtrack production is an art, but it is an art one can learn. Of course, it is no easy task to create a superb narration, but short, informative comments are often very helpful for the viewer. Whatever narration there is should sound natural, expressive and spontaneous, not wooden or stiff.

## **Keep comments brief**

A general rule applicable to all commentary is that less is more. Pictures should speak for themselves, and things that are evident to viewers from the pictures require no comment.

## **Preserve original sounds**

Spoken commentary should be mixed with both the original sounds and the music in such a way that the original sounds can still be heard. Natural sound is part

of your video footage and should not be cut away altogether if at all possible, because video without natural sound can easily seem sterile and lacking in authenticity. Frequently, however, the recording equipment captures noises from aircraft and cars that do not appear in the scene later. Sounds such as these, or loud wind noises, which can be distracting or annoying, should be masked, filtered or replaced with appropriate narration or music.

### **Select appropriate music**

Appropriate music adds a professional finishing touch to your movie and can do a lot to reinforce the message of a video. The music selected, however, should always be appropriate to the message of the film. This is sometimes a time-consuming matter and a challenge, but greatly appreciated by the viewer.

---

## **Title**

---

The title should be informative, describe the contents of the movie, and arouse interest. With the Title Editor there are no limits to how creative you can be. As a rule, you can let your fancy run free when designing a title for your video.

### **Use a short, clear title**

Titles should be short and in a large, legible font.

### **Title colors**

The following combinations of background and text are easy to read: white with red, yellow with black, and

white with green. Exercise caution with very white titles on a very black background. Some video systems are unable to handle contrast ratios in excess of 1:40 and are unable to reproduce such titles in detail.

### **Time on screen**

As a rule of thumb, a title should be displayed long enough to be read twice. Allow about three seconds for a title with ten letters. Allow an additional second of on-screen time for every five additional letters.

### **“Found” titles**

Besides postproduction titles, natural titles like directional signs, street signs or title pages of local newspapers also create interesting possibilities.

## APPENDIX E:

---

# Glossary

Multimedia terminology contains computer and video terminology. The most important terms are defined below. Cross-references are indicated by .

**720p:** A high-definition (HD) video format with a resolution of 1280x720 and progressive (non-interlaced) frames.

**108i:** A high-definition (HD) video format with a resolution of 1440x1080 and interlaced frames.

**ActiveMovie:** Software interface by Microsoft for the control of multimedia devices under Windows.  
 *DirectShow, DirectMedia*

**ADPCM:** Acronym for Adaptive Delta Pulse Code Modulation, a method of storing audio information in a digital format. This is the audio encoding and compression method used in CD-I and  *CD-ROM* production.

**Address:** All available saving positions in a computer are numbered (addressed). By means of these addresses each saving position can be occupied. Some addresses are reserved for the exclusive use of particular hardware components. If two components are using the same address, this is called an “address conflict”.

**Aliasing:** An inaccurate display of an image due to the limitations of the output device. Typically, aliasing appears in the form of jagged edges along curves and angled shapes.

**Anti-aliasing:** A method of smoothing out jagged edges in bitmap images. This is usually accomplished by shading the edges with pixels intermediate in color between the edge and the background, making the transition less apparent. Another method of anti-aliasing involves using higher resolution output devices.

**Aspect ratio:** The ratio of width to height in an image or graphic. Keeping the aspect ratio fixed means that any change to one value is immediately reflected in the other.

**AVI:** Audio Video Interleaved, a standard format for digital video (and  *Video for Windows*).

**Batch capture:** An automated process that uses an  *edit decision list* to locate and recapture specific clips from a videotape, usually at a higher data rate than the clip was originally captured.

**BIOS:** Acronym for Basic Input Output System, which refers to basic input and output commands saved in a  *ROM*, *PROM* or  *EPROM*. The essential task of the BIOS is the control of input and output. When the system is started, the ROM-BIOS carries out some tests.  *Parallel port, IRQ, I/O*

**Bit:** Abbreviation of “BInary digiT”, the smallest element of a computer’s memory. Among other things, bits are used to store the color values of pixels in an

image. The more bits used for each  *pixel*, the greater the number of available colors. For example:

1-bit: each pixel is either black or white.

4-bit: allows 16 colors or gray shades.

8-bit: allows 256 colors or gray shades.

16-bit: allows 65,536 colors.

24-bit: allows about 16.7 million colors.

**Bitmap:** An image format made up of a collection of dots or “pixels” arranged in rows.  *Pixel*

**Blacking:** The process of preparing a videotape for insert editing by recording video black and continuous control track on the entire tape. If the recording deck supports timecode, continuous timecode will be recorded simultaneously (also called “striping”).

**Brightness:** Also “luminance”. Indicates the brightness of video.

**Byte:** One byte corresponds to eight  *bits*. With one byte, exactly one alphanumeric character can be displayed (i.e. a letter, number).

**CD-ROM:** Mass storage media for digital data, such as digital video. CD-ROMs can be read from but not written (recorded) onto:  *ROM* is an acronym for Read-Only Memory.

**Channel:** Classifications of information within a data file to isolate a particular aspect of the file. For example, color images use different channels to classify the color components in the image. Stereo audio files use channels to identify the sounds intended for the left and right speakers. Video files use combinations of the channels used for image and audio files.

**Clip:** In Studio, any media type that goes on the Movie Window Storyboard or Timeline, including video images, trimmed video scenes, images, audio files and disc menus.

**Clipboard:** A temporary storage area shared by all Windows programs, used to hold data during cut, copy, and paste operations. Any new data you place onto the clipboard immediately replaces the existing data.

**Closed GOP:**  *GOP*

**Codec:** Contraction of compressor/decompressor – an algorithm that compresses (packs) and decompresses (unpacks) image data. Codecs can be implemented in either software or hardware.

**Color depth:** Number of bits delivering the color information for each pixel. A 1-bit color depth allows  $2^1=2$  colors, an 8-bit depth allows  $2^8=256$  colors, and a 24-bit depth allows  $2^{24}=16,777,216$  colors.

**Color model:** A way to mathematically describe and define colors and the way they relate to each other. Each color model has its own strengths. The two most common color models are  *RGB* and  *YUV*.

**Color saturation:** Intensity of a color.

**Complementary color:** Complementary colors are opposite in value to primary colors. If you were to combine a color with its complement, the result would be white. For example, the complementary colors of red, green and blue are cyan, magenta and yellow respectively.

**COM Port:** A serial port located on the back of your computer for attaching a modem, plotter, printer or mouse to the system.

**Composite video:** Composite video encodes luminance and chrominance information into one signal. 📖 *VHS* and 8mm are formats that record and play back composite video.

**Compression:** A method for making files smaller in size. There are two types of compression: *lossless* and *lossy*. Files compressed with a lossless scheme can be restored unchanged from their original state. Lossy schemes discard data during compression, so some image quality is sacrificed. The loss of quality may be negligible or severe depending on the amount of compression.

**Cropping:** Choosing the area of an image to be displayed.

**Data rate:** The quantity of data transmitted per unit time; for example, the number of bytes read from or written to a hard drive per second, or the amount of video data processed per second.

**Data transfer rate:** The measurement of the speed at which information passes between the storage device (e.g. 📖 *CD-ROM* or hard drive) and the display device (e.g. monitor or 📖 *MCI* device). Depending on the devices used, some transfer rates may offer better performance than others.

**DCT:** Discrete Cosine Transformation – part of 📖 *JPEG* image data compression and related algorithms. The brightness and color information is saved as a frequency coefficient.

**DirectShow:** System extension by Microsoft for multimedia applications under Windows. 📖 *ActiveMovie*

**DirectMedia:** System extension by Microsoft for multimedia applications under Windows.  
📖 *ActiveMovie*

**DirectX:** A bundle of several system extensions developed by Microsoft for Windows 95 and its successors to make possible video and game acceleration.

**Dissolve:** A transitional effect in which the video is faded from one scene to the next.

**Dithering:** Increasing the number of apparent colors in an image by the application of color patterns.

**Decibel (dB):** A unit of measurement of the loudness of sound. An increase of 3 dB doubles the loudness.

**Digital8:** Digital videotape format that records 📖 *DV*-coded audio and video data on 📖 *Hi8* tapes. Currently sold only by Sony, Digital8 camcorders and VCRs can play both Hi8 and 8mm cassettes.

**Digital video:** Digital video stores information 📖 *bit* by bit in a file (in contrast to analog storage media).

**DMA:** Direct Memory Access.

**Driver:** A file containing information needed to operate peripherals. The video capture driver operates a video capture board, for example.

**DV:** Digital videotape format for recording digital audio and video on 1/4"-wide metal evaporated tape. Mini-DV tapes hold up to 60 minutes of content, while standard DV tapes can hold up to 270 minutes.

**ECP:** "Enhanced Compatible Port". Enables accelerated bi-directional data transfer via the 📖 *parallel port*. 📖 *EPP*

**Edit decision list (EDL):** A list of clips and effects in a particular order that will be recorded onto your output tape, disc or file. Studio allows you to create and edit your own edit decision list by adding, deleting and reordering clips and effects in the Movie Window.

**EPP:** “Enhanced Parallel Port”. Enables accelerated bi-directional data transfer via the  *parallel port*; recommended for Studio DV.  *ECP*

**EPROM:** “Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory”. Memory chip that after programming retains its data without power supply. The memory contents can be erased with ultraviolet light and rewritten.

**Fade to/from black:** A digital effect that fades up from black at the beginning of a clip or down to black at the end.

**Field:** A  *frame* of video consists of horizontal lines and is divided into two fields. The odd lines in the frame are Field 1; the even-numbered lines are Field 2.

**File format:** The organization of information within a computer file such as an image or word processor document. The format of a file is usually indicated by its “file extension” (e.g. **doc**, **avi** or **wmf**).

**Filters:** Tools that alter data to produce special effects.

**FireWire:** Apple Computer’s trademarked name for the  *IEEE-1394* serial data protocol.

**Frame:** A single image in a video or animation sequence. If using full NTSC or PAL resolution, one frame consists of two interlaced fields.  *NTSC*, *PAL*, *field*, *resolution*

**Frame rate:** The frame rate defines how many frames of a video sequence are played in one second. The

frame rate for 📖 *NTSC* video is 30 frames per second. The frame rate for 📖 *PAL* video is 25 frames per second.

**Frame size:** The maximum size for displaying image data in a video or animation sequence. If an image intended for the sequence is larger than the frame size, it must be cropped or scaled to fit.

**Frequency:** The number of repetitions in a periodic process (like a sound wave or an alternating voltage) per unit of time. Usually measured in repetitions per second, or Hertz (Hz).

**GOP:** In 📖 *MPEG* compression the data stream is first divided into “Groups Of Pictures” – sections of several frames each. Each GOP contains three types of frames: I-Frames, P-Frames (pictures) and B-Frames.

**GOP size:** The GOP size defines, how many I-Frames, B-Frames and P-Frames are included in one 📖 *GOP*. For example, current GOP sizes are 9 or 12.

**Hardware codec:** Compression method that uses special hardware to create and play back compressed digital video sequences. A hardware codec may offer better encoding speed and image quality than a codec implemented completely in software. 📖 *Codec*, *Software codec*

**HD:** High Definition video. Most HD formats in use have a resolution of either 1920x1080 resolution or 1280x720 resolution. A substantial difference exists between the 1080 and 720 standards: the larger format uses 2.25 more pixels per frame. This difference substantially increases requirements for processing 1080 content in terms of encoding time, decoding speed, and storage. The 720 formats are all progressive. The 1080 format has a mixture of progressive and

interlaced frame types. Computers and their displays are inherently progressive, whereas television broadcasting has been based on interlaced techniques and standards. For HD terminology, we indicate progressive with the letter "p" and interlaced with the letter "i"

**HDV:** A format for the recording and playback of high-definition video on a DV cassette tape. has been established as the "HDV" format". Instead of the "DV" codec, HDV uses a flavor of MPEG-2 . There are two varieties of HDV: HDV1 and HDV2. HDV1 is 1280x720 resolution with progressive frames (720p). The MPEG transport stream is 19.7 Mbps/s. HDV2 is 1440x1080 resolution with interlaced frames (1080i). The MPEG transport stream is 25 Mbps/s.

**Hi8:** Improved version of  *Video8* using  *S-Video* recorded on metal particle or metal evaporated tape. Because of higher luminance resolution and wider bandwidth, the result is sharper pictures than Video8.

**HiColor:** For images, this normally means a 16-bit (5-6-5) data type that can contain up to 65,536 colors. TGA file formats support images of this type. Other file formats require prior conversion of a HiColor image into  *TrueColor*. For displays, HiColor normally refers to 15-bit (5-5-5) display adapters that can display up to 32,768 colors.  *Bit*

**Huffman coding:** Technique used in  *JPEG* and other data compression methods in which seldom occurring values receive a long code, while frequently-occurring values receive a short code.

**IDE:** "Integrated Device Electronics" – a hard-drive interface that combines all drive control electronics on the drive itself, rather than on the adapter connecting the drive to the expansion bus.

**IEEE-1394:** Developed by Apple Computers and introduced as FireWire, this is a serial data transmission protocol with rates up to 400 Mbits/sec. Sony offers a slightly modified version for transmitting DV signals named i.LINK, providing transmission speeds up to 100 Mbits/sec.

**Image:** An image is a reproduction, or picture of something. The term is often applied to digitized pictures, consisting of pixels, that can be shown on a computer display and manipulated by software.

**Image compression:** Method of reducing the amount of data required to store digital image and video files.

**Interlaced:** The screen refresh method used by television systems. The  *PAL* TV image consists of two interleaved image halves ( *fields*) of 312½ lines each. The  *NTSC* TV image consists of two image halves of 242½ lines each. The fields are displayed alternately to produce a blended image.

**Interleave:** An arrangement of audio and video to promote smoother playback and synchronization or compression. The standard  *AVI* format equally spaces audio and video.

**I/O:** Input/Output.

**IRQ:** “Interrupt Request”. An “interrupt” is a temporary break in the main processing stream of a computer so that housekeeping or background tasks can be performed. Interrupts can be requested by either hardware (e.g. keyboard, mouse) or software.

**JPEG:** Joint Photographic Experts Group, and the standard developed by them for compressing digital frames based on  *DCT*.

**Kbyte (also KB):** One Kbyte (kilobyte) contains 1024  *bytes*. The “K” here stands for the number 1024 ( $2^{10}$ ), and not 1000 as in the metric prefix.

**Key color:** A color whose display is suppressed so that a background image can show through. Most commonly used when overlaying one video sequence on top of another, allowing the underlying video to display wherever the key color appears.

**Key frames:** In some compression methods, such as  *MPEG*, the video data of certain frames – the key frames – is stored completely in the compressed file, while any intervening frames are only partially saved. On decompression these partial frames reconstruct their data from the key frames.

**Laser disc:** Medium that stores analog video. Information on laser discs cannot be modified.

**LPT:**  *Parallel port*

**Luminance:**  *Brightness*

**M1V:** (File extension for) an MPEG file that contains video data only.  *MPA, MPEG, MPG*

**Mbyte (also MB):** One Mbyte (megabyte) corresponds to 1024  *Kbytes* – 1024 x 1024 bytes.

**Mark In / Mark Out:** In video editing, the mark in and mark out times refer to the starting and ending timecodes that identify the portions of clips to be included in the project.

**MCI:** Media Control Interface. Programming interface developed by Microsoft recording and playing back audio and video data. It is also used to connect a computer to an external video source such as a VCR or laser disc.

**Modulation:** The encoding of information upon an empty carrier signal.

**Motion-JPEG (M-JPEG):** A  *Video for Windows* format, specified by Microsoft, for encoding video

sequences. 📖 *JPEG* compression is used to compress each frame individually.

**MPA:** (File extension for) an MPEG file that contains audio data only. 📖 *MIV, MPEG, MPG*

**MPEG:** Motion Picture Experts Group, and the standard developed by them for the compression of moving images. Compared to M-JPEG, it offers 75-80% data reduction with the same visual quality.

**MPG:** (File extension for) an MPEG file that contains both video and audio data. 📖 *MIV, MPEG, MPA*

**MPV:** (File extension for) an MPEG file that contains video data only. 📖 *MPA, MPEG, MPG*

**Non-interlaced:** Describes an image refresh method in which the complete image is generated as a single field without skipping lines. A non-interlaced image (most computer monitors) flickers much less than an interlaced image (most TVs).

**NTSC:** National Television Standards Committee, and the color TV standard created by them in 1953. NTSC video has 525 lines per frame and 60 image fields per second. It is used in North and Central America, Japan and other countries. 📖 *PAL, SECAM*

**PAL:** “Phase Alternation Line”, a color TV standard developed in Germany and used throughout most of Europe. PAL video has 625 lines per frame and 50 image fields per second. 📖 *NTSC, SECAM*

**Parallel port:** Parallel port data is transmitted via an 8-bit data line. This means that eight 📖 *bits* (one 📖 *byte*) can be transmitted at once. This kind of transmission is much faster than serial transmission, but is not appropriate for long-distance connections. Parallel ports are often named “LPT $n$ ”, where  $n$  is a number (e.g. “LPT1”). 📖 *Serial port*

**Pixel:** The smallest element of a monitor image. The word is an abbreviation of “picture element”.

**Port:** Electrical transfer point for the transmission of audio, video, control or other data between two devices. 📖 *Serial port, Parallel port*

**Primary colors:** The colors that are the basis of the RGB color model: red, green, and blue. It is possible to create most other colors on a computer screen by varying the blend of these primaries.

**QSIF:** Quarter Standard Image Format. An MPEG-1 format specifying a resolution of 176 x 144 under PAL and 176 x 120 under NTSC. 📖 *MPEG, SIF*

**Quantization:** One part of the 📖 *JPEG* image data compression strategy. Relevant details are represented precisely, while details that are less relevant for the human eye are represented with less precision.

**Raster:** The area of a video display that is covered by sweeping the electron beam of the display in a series of horizontal lines from upper left to lower right (from the viewer’s perspective).

**Redundancy:** This trait of images is exploited by compression algorithms. Superfluous information can be eliminated during compression and restored without loss during decompression.

**Resolution:** The number of pixels that can be displayed on the monitor horizontally and vertically. The higher the resolution, the more details can be displayed. 📖 *Pixel*

**RGB:** Red, Green and Blue: the primary colors in additive color mixing. RGB designates the method used in computer technology of encoding image information in pixels, each containing some combination of the three primaries.

**ROM:** Read Only Memory: Memory storage that, having been programmed once, retains its data without requiring electrical power. 📖 *EPROM*

**Run Length Encoding (RLE):** A technique used in many image compression methods, including 📖 *JPEG*. Repeating values are not stored separately but with a counter to indicate how many times the value occurs in succession – the length of the “run”.

**Scaling:** Adaptation of an image to a desired size.

**SCSI:** Small Computers System Interface. SCSI was long preferred as the hard drive interface for some high-performance PCs because of its high data rate. Up to eight SCSI devices can be connected to a computer at the same time.

**SECAM:** “Séquentiel Couleur à Mémoire”, a color TV transmission system used in France and Eastern Europe. Like PAL, SECAM video has 625 lines per frame and 50 image fields per second. 📖 *NTSC, PAL*

**Serial port:** Data transmitted via a serial port is processed one 📖 *bit* at a time; that is, “serially” – one after another. The transmission rate is much slower than that of a parallel port, where parallel data lines allow multiple bits to be sent simultaneously. Serial ports are named “COM $n$ ”, where  $n$  is a number (e.g. “COM2”). 📖 *Parallel port*

**SIF:** Standard Image Format. An MPEG-1 format specifying a resolution of 352 x 288 under PAL and 352 x 240 under NTSC. 📖 *MPEG, QSIF*

**Single frame:** A single 📖 *frame* is part of a series or sequence. When this series is viewed at sufficient speed, the illusion of a “moving picture” is created.

**Software codec:** Compression method that can create and play back compressed digital video sequences without special hardware. The quality of the sequences depends on the performance of the complete system.

 *Codec, Hardware codec*

**Still video:** Still images (or “freeze-frames”) extracted from video.

**S-VHS:** Improved version of VHS using S-Video and metal particle tape to deliver higher luminance resolution, resulting in sharper pictures than VHS.

 *VHS, S-Video*

**S-Video:** With S-Video (Y/C) signals, the brightness (luminance or “Y”) and the color (chrominance or “C”) information are transferred separately using multiple wires, avoiding modulating and demodulating the video and the resulting loss of picture quality.

**Timecode:** Timecode identifies the position of each frame in a video sequence with respect to a starting point (normally the beginning of the shot). The usual format is H:M:S:F (hours, minutes, seconds, frames), e.g. “01:22:13:21”. Unlike a tape counter (which can be “zeroed” or reset at any point in a tape), timecode is an electronic signal written onto videotape, and is permanent once it is assigned.

**Transition:** The visual connection between adjacent video clips, ranging from a simple “cut” to a showy animated effect. The common transitions like cuts, fades, dissolves, wipes and slides are part of the visual language of film and video. They can convey passages of time and changes of viewpoint concisely – and often subliminally.

**TrueColor:** The name indicates an image with enough color resolution to appear “true to life”. In practice, TrueColor normally refers to 24-bit RGB color, which allows about 16.7 million combinations of the red, green and blue primary colors. 📖 *Bit, HiColor*

**TWAIN driver:** TWAIN is a standardized software interface allowing graphics and capture programs to communicate with devices that supply graphical data. If the TWAIN driver is installed, the capture function of a graphics application can be used to load images directly from your video source into the program. The driver supports 32-bit programs only and captures images in 24-bit mode.

**VCR:** “Video cassette recorder”.

**VHS:** “Video Home System” – Popular video standard for home VCRs. Half-inch tape is used to store “composite” signals incorporating both brightness and color information.

**VISCA:** Protocol used with certain devices for controlling external video sources from computers.

**Video8:** Analog video system using 8mm tape. Video8 recorders generate composite signals.

**Video CD:** CD-ROM standard that uses 📖 *MPEG* compressed videos.

**Video decoder:** Converts digital information into analog video signals.

**Video encoder:** Converts analog video signals into digital information.

**Video for Windows:** A Microsoft Windows system extension that can record digital video sequences to files on a hard drive and subsequently play them back.

**Video scan rate:** Frequency with which the video signal is scanned onto an image display. The higher the video scan rate, the higher the image quality and the less noticeable the flicker.

**WAV:** (File extension for) a popular file format for digitized audio signals.

**White balance:** In an electronic camera, this is the adjustment of the amplifiers for the three color channels (red, green and blue) so that white areas of the scene do not show a color cast.

**Y/C:** Y/C is a color signal with two components: brightness information (Y) and color information (C).

**YUV:** The color model of a video signal where Y delivers the brightness information and U and V the color information.



# License agreement

### **Pinnacle End User License Agreement**

This End User License Agreement ("License") is a legal agreement between you and Pinnacle Systems ("Pinnacle") regarding Pinnacle's software and the accompanying documentation (collectively, the "Software"). CAREFULLY READ THE FOLLOWING LICENSE. USING THIS SOFTWARE INDICATES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THIS LICENSE. IF YOU DO NOT ACCEPT OR UNDERSTAND THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE, YOU SHOULD NOT INSTALL THE SOFTWARE AND SHOULD PROMPTLY RETURN THIS PRODUCT TO THE PLACE OF PURCHASE.

**1. License Grant.** Subject to the restrictions set forth below, this License grants you a non-exclusive, perpetual license to (a) install the Software on only one computer; (b) use or authorise use of the Software on only one computer; (c) make one copy of the Software, in machine-readable form, solely for backup purposes; provided you include all copyright and other proprietary rights notices on the copy and (d) transfer the Software and this License to another party if the other party agrees to accept the terms and conditions of this License. If you transfer the Software, you must at the same time either transfer all copies to the same party or destroy any copies not transferred. If you transfer possession of any copy of the Software to another party, your License is automatically terminated. Some features of the Software may be locked and require that you activate, either for free or subject to payment of additional license fees, the features before you may use them. Additionally, Pinnacle may, either for free or subject to payment of additional license fees, grant you a license for plug-ins to the Software produced or distributed by Pinnacle (the "Plug-ins"). Your use of any such features and any of the Plug-ins shall be subject to the terms of this Agreement, unless accompanied

by another license agreement, in which case the Plug-ins license agreement shall prevail.

**2. License Restrictions.** You may not, or allow any third party to, (a) rent, lease, sell, loan or otherwise transfer the Software or any of your rights and obligations under this License; (b) install the Software on a network for use by multiple users, unless each user has purchased a license; (c) reverse-engineer, decompile or disassemble the Software or hardware in whole or in part; (d) remove or destroy any copyright notices or other proprietary markings of the Software or any third-party software; (e) modify or adapt the Software, merge the Software into another program or create derivative works based on the Software; (f) make copies of or distribute, for profit or otherwise, the Software, except as expressly provided above; (g) make any alteration, modification, connection, disconnection, improvement or adjustment of any kind to or use the Software except as explicitly contemplated in the enclosed documentation and in this License and (h) sublicense, transfer or assign this License or any of the rights and obligations granted under this License, except as explicitly contemplated in this License. Any purported transfer or assignment will be void.

**3. Export Restrictions.** The export and re-export of Pinnacle software products are controlled by the United States Export Administration Regulations and such software may not be exported or re-exported to any country to which the United States embargoes goods. In addition, Pinnacle software may not be distributed to persons on the Table of Denial Orders, the Entity List, or the List of Specially Designated Nationals. By downloading or using a Pinnacle software product you are certifying that you are not a national of any country to which the United States embargoes goods and that you are not a person on the Table of Denial Orders, the Entity List, or the List of Specially Designated Nationals.

**4. Ownership.** The license granted hereunder does not constitute a transfer or sale of ownership rights in or to the Software. Except for the license rights granted above, Pinnacle retains all rights, title and interest in and to the Software including all intellectual property rights therein. The Software is protected by applicable intellectual property laws, including United States copyright laws and international treaties.

**5. Third Party Proprietary Property.** This Software may contain the proprietary property of others, which has been licensed to Pinnacle. Your use of the Software is expressly subject to your agreement not to remove any copyright notices or other proprietary markings of the third party software.

**6. Security.** You acknowledge and agree that in order to protect the integrity of certain third party content, Pinnacle and/or its licensors may provide for Software security related updates that will be automatically downloaded and installed on your computer. Such security related updates may impair the Software (and any other software on your computer which specifically depends on the Software) including disabling your ability to copy and/or play "secure" content, i.e. content protected by digital rights management. In such an event, Pinnacle and/or its licensors shall use reasonable efforts to post notices promptly on Pinnacle's web site explaining the security update and providing instructions to end-users for obtaining new versions or further updates of the Software that restore access to secure content and related features.

**7. Updates.** You acknowledge and agree that Pinnacle may automatically check the version of the Software and/or its components that you are using and may provide updates or fixes to the Software that may be automatically downloaded to your computer. Updates provided after the expiry of the Limited Warranty period set forth in Section 9 below are not covered by any warranty, express, implied, or statutory.

**8. Term and Termination.** This License shall be effective upon installation of the Software and shall terminate upon the earlier of (a) your failure to comply with any term of this License; (b) return, destruction or deletion of all copies of the Software in your possession or (c) transfer of the Software and this License to another party in accordance with Section 1(d). Pinnacle's rights and your obligations shall survive termination of this License.

**9. Limited Warranty.** Pinnacle warrants to the original licensee that the Software, as delivered, will perform in accordance with the accompanying documentation for a period of 30 days from the date of the original purchase ("Limited Warranty"). Pinnacle's entire liability and your exclusive remedy for breach of the preceding Limited Warranty shall be, at Pinnacle's sole option, repair or replacement of the Software that does not meet the warranty set forth herein and that is returned to Pinnacle. This limited warranty shall be void if failure of the Software has resulted from any accident, abuse, misuse or misapplication by you. Any replacement Software will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or 30 days, whichever is longer.

**10. NO OTHER WARRANTIES.** EXCEPT AS SET FORTH ABOVE, THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" BASIS. YOU ASSUME ALL RESPONSIBILITIES FOR THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. TO THE

MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, PINNACLE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. LICENSOR DOES NOT WARRANT THAT THE FUNCTIONS CONTAINED IN THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR FREE.

**11. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY.** YOU AGREE THAT IN NO EVENT WILL PINNACLE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, EVEN IF PINNACLE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN NO EVENT SHALL PINNACLE'S LIABILITY EXCEED THE TOTAL AMOUNT OF THE FEES PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE. Some states/jurisdictions do not allow the limitation or exclusion of incidental or consequential damages in certain circumstances, so the above limitations may not apply in some circumstances.

**12. General.** This License is governed by the laws of the State of California and by the federal laws of the United States, without reference to conflict of laws principles. The federal and state courts within the County of Santa Clara, California shall have exclusive jurisdiction to adjudicate any dispute arising out of this License and you hereby consent to the personal jurisdiction of the federal and state courts within the County of Santa Clara, California. This License is the entire agreement between you and Pinnacle and supersedes any other communication with respect to the Software. No modification of or amendment to this License will be effective unless in writing signed by both parties. If any provision of this License is held invalid or unenforceable, the remainder of this License will continue in full force and effect.

# Keyboard shortcuts

The terms *Left*, *Right*, *Up* and *Down* in this table refer to the arrow (cursor) keys.

### Main Studio interface

Space bar	Play and stop
J	Fast reverse (hit multiple times for faster playback)
K	Halt playback
L	Fast forward (hit multiple times for faster playback)
X or Ctrl+Up	Step forward 1 frame
Y or Ctrl+Down	Step back 1 frame
A or I	Mark in
S or O	Mark out
Ctrl+Left	Trim in point by -1 frame
Ctrl+Right	Trim in point by +1 frame
Alt+Left	Trim out point by -1 frame
Alt+Right	Trim out point by +1 frame
Alt+Ctrl+Left	Rolling trim out point by -1 frame (trims following clip too)
Alt+Ctrl+Right	Rolling trim out point by +1 frame
G	Clear mark in and mark out
D	Go to mark in (in trimmer tool)
F	Go to mark out (in trimmer tool)
E or Home	Go to start

R or End	Go to end
Left	Select previous clip
Right	Select next clip
Delete	Delete selected clip(s)
Insert	Split clip at scrubber position
Page up	Go to next page in Movie Window
Page down	Go to previous page in Movie Window
Numeric pad +	Zoom in the Timeline
Numeric pad -	Zoom out the Timeline
C	Set menu chapter
V	Clear menu chapter
M	Set return to menu
Ctrl+Page up	Go to previous menu chapter
Ctrl+Page down	Go to next menu chapter

## **Title Editor**

Alt+Plus	Bring to front
Alt+Minus	Send to back
Ctrl+Plus	Bring forward one layer
Ctrl+Minus	Send back one layer
Ctrl+0	Text justification off
Ctrl+1	Text justification: bottom left
Ctrl+2	Text justification: bottom center
Ctrl+3	Text justification: bottom right
Ctrl+4	Text justification: middle left
Ctrl+5	Text justification: middle center
Ctrl+6	Text justification: middle right
Ctrl+7	Text justification: top left
Ctrl+8	Text justification: top center
Ctrl+9	Text justification: top right
Ctrl+K	Kern, leading and skew
Ctrl+M	Move, scale and rotate
Shift+Left	Expand character selection left
Shift+Right	Expand character selection right

Ctrl+Left	Reduce horizontal scale of, or squeeze (kern), text selection depending on current edit mode (move/scale/rotate or kern/skew/leading)
Ctrl+Right	Increase horizontal scale of, or stretch (kern), text selection
Ctrl+Down	Reduce scale or leading of text selection depending on current edit mode
Ctrl+Up	Increase scale or leading of text selection
Shift+Ctrl+Left	Same as Ctrl+Left (coarse)
Shift+Ctrl+Right	Same as Ctrl+Right (coarse)
Shift+Ctrl+Down	Same as Ctrl+Down (coarse)
Shift+Ctrl+Up	Same as Ctrl+Up (coarse)
Alt+Left	<b>In text selection:</b> Move characters left. <b>No selection:</b> Move left all text from cursor to end of line.
Alt+Right	<b>In text selection:</b> Move characters right. <b>No selection:</b> Move right all text from cursor to end of line.
Shift+Alt+Left	Same as Alt+Left (coarse)
Shift+Alt+Right	Same as Alt+Right (coarse)



# Index

## 2

2D editor (video effect), 117

## A

A/B editing, 127

Abbreviations, xiii

Activate

    Explained, 14

Activating

    Disc menus, 56

    Hollywood FX, 52

    Sound effects, 58

Album

    Aspect ratio, 78

    Clipboard operations, 75

    Disc Menus section, 55, 169

    Drag-and-drop editing, 74

    Filled during capture, 19

    Image sections, 152

    Interface features, 39

    Introduced, 19

    Menu usage, 39

    Music section, 58

    Overview, 35

    Previewing, 6, 37

    Selecting video scenes, 45

    Sound Effects section, 57

    Source folders, 37

    Still Images section, 54

Title Editor. *See* Title Editor

    Album

    Titles section, 53

    Transitions section, 51, 141

    Video Scenes section, 38, 73

Album menu

    Combine Scenes, 48

    Comment view, 46

    Details view, 46

    Find Scene in Project, 39, 80

    Icon view, 46

    Scene detection commands, 50

    Scene view, 46

    Select By Name, 47

    Set Thumbnail, 42

    Subdivide Scenes, 49

Alpha Magic transitions, 143

Analog

    Capture quality options, 31

    Levels during capture, 31

    Outputting to, 243

Animated pan-and-zoom, 157

Animation, 281

Aspect ratios (frame formats), 24,  
42

    Capture option, 248

    Mixing, 76

Audio

    Adjusting on Timeline, 216

    Background music, 204

    Insert editing, 94

    Muting, 66

- Original, 203
- Overlay, 126
- Overlay, original, 203
- Scrubbing, 60
- Settings (for File output), 268
- Sound effects, 203
- Surround, 218
- Synchronized with video, 90
- Synchronous, 63, 146, 203
- Tracks on Timeline, 203
- Transitions, 146
- Uses of, 201
- Using in Studio, 202
- Using without video, 75
- Voice-overs, 203
- Volume and mixing, 213, 218
- Audio clips, 63
  - Interface details, 213
  - Trimming, 211
- Audio compression, 268
- Audio effects, 223
  - ChannelTool, 226
  - Chorus, 227
  - DeEsser, 227
  - Equalizer, 227
  - Grungelizer, 228
  - Icons, 224
  - In Studio Plus, 226
  - Leveler, 229
  - Noise reduction, 225
  - Reverb, 230
  - Standard vs. Plus, 224
  - Stereo Echo, 230
  - Stereo Spread, 230
  - Tool, 223
  - Unlocking, 101
- Audio levels
  - Changing during capture, 20
  - In analog capture, 32
  - In DV capture, 30
- Audio scrubbing button, 60
- Audio toolbox, 71
- Audio track
  - Linked to video track, 92
- Audio tracks, 204

- Auto color correction (video effect), 111
- Automatic scene detection. *See* Scene detection
- AVI files, 57

## B

- Background
  - In Title Editor, 195
- Background music, 62, 63
  - CD, 205
  - Formats, 204
  - SmartSound, 206
- Background rendering, 77
  - Enabling and disabling, 146
  - Of Hollywood FX, 146
  - Of moving menu thumbnails, 177
  - Of video effects, 108
- Backgrounds section
  - Of Title Editor Album, 195
- Balance
  - Adjusting on Timeline, 217
- Balance and volume, 71, 213
- Black and white (video effect), 119
- Blur (video effect), 114
- Buttons
  - Audio scrubbing, 60
  - Chapter. *See* Disc menus
  - Clip, 59
  - Clip delete, 61
  - Clip split, 59
  - DVD toggle, 6
  - Edit menu, 70
  - Highlighting, 200
  - Mode, 2
  - Playback, 8
  - Razorblade, 89
  - Reset (pan-and-zoom), 156
  - Split clip, 89, 92
  - Split clip/scene, 60
  - Start/stop capture, 21
  - Tool selector, 68
  - Toolbox, 68

- Track-locking, 91
- Undo, Redo, Help, Support and Activate, 3
- View selection, 59

Buttons section

- Of Title Editor Album, 198

## C

Camcorder Controller, 20, 22, 162

Capture, 17

- Analog quality options, 31
- Analog vs. digital, 20
- And the Album, 19
- Audio and video levels, 31
- Change directory, 22
- Device selection, 24
- Devices, 246
- Directory, 21
- Drive-speed, 29
- Format options, 250
- From analog sources, 30
- From DV, 28, 30
- From DVD, 33
- From HDV, 30
- Hardware, 23
- MPEG options, 253
- Preparing hard drive, 278
- Scene detection, 27
- Source options, 246
- Sources, 23
- Step-by-step, 25
- To multiple files, 76

Capture mode

- Interface, 19
- Introduced, 1

Capture settings, 21

Captured video

- Folders, 40
- Opening file, 40

CD audio clips

- Properties of, 212

CD audio tool, 72, 205

ChannelTool (audio effect), 226

Chapter links. *See* Links

Chapters

- On menu track, 173

Chorus (audio effect), 227

Chroma key

- Background cloth for, 139
- Tips, 138
- Tool, 133
- Video effect, 137

Clip properties

- Duration, 155
- Name, 155

Clip properties tool, 66, 70, 71

- For audio clips, 211
- For disc menus, 174
- For still images, 154
- For transitions, 148
- For video clips, 87
- Trimming with, 86, 148

Clipboard

- With Album and Movie Window, 75

Clips

- Audio, 63
- Changing name, 86
- Combining, 90
- Deleting, 61
- Splitting, 60, 89
- Trimming on the Timeline, 81
- Trimming tips, 85
- Video, 63

Close-ups, 313

Color correction (video effect), 119

Color effects

- White balance, 121

Colors

- Selecting, 140

Combine Clips menu command, 90

Compression

- Audio, 268
- Video, 267

Configuration. *See* Options

Continuity (videography tip), 315

Conventions, xiii

Counter, 10

- Cross fade
  - In audio, 146
- Cut (transition), 143
- Cuts
  - Associative, 317
  - Cause and effect, 318
  - Contrast, 317
  - Formal, 318
  - Parallel, 317
  - Substitutionary, 317
  - Tempo of (videography tip), 315

## D

- Data rate
  - For DV capture, 249
- DeEsser (audio effect), 227
- Delete clip button, 61
- Deleting clips, 61
- Deleting scenes, 61
- Devices
  - Capture, 24, 246
- Dialog boxes
  - Main Options, 245
  - Make Movie Options, 245
  - Options, 245
- DirectX, xii
- Disc
  - MPEG encoding, 28
  - Previewing, 171
  - Saving movie to, 233
- Disc chapter command, 170
- Disc menu tool, 70, 179
- Disc menus, 165
  - Activating, 56
  - Automatic link creation, 170
  - Button captions, 169
  - Chapter editing, 178
  - Creating, 181
  - Described, 165
  - Editing, 181
  - Editing links, 174
  - Editing on Timeline, 172
  - Link numbers during editing, 176
  - Loop during playback, 166

- Menus vs. titles, 168
- Motion backgrounds, 196
- Moving Thumbnails option, 177
- Name and duration, 175
- On moving video, 168
- Opening in Title Editor, 175
- Placing on Timeline, 170
- Sample movie layout, 166
- Section (of Album), 55, 169
- Setting thumbnail, 177
- Supplied, 169
- VCD, S-VCD limitations, 169

## Discs

- Authoring, 1, 36, 55, 151, 167, 198, 213

## Diskometer, 20, 21

## Dissolve (transition), 144

## Drag-and-drop

- Editing, 74
- From Album, 74, 141
- Setting menu links, 179

## Drive space

- For DV capture, 29

## Drive speed

- For video capture, 29
- Insufficient data rate, 249

## Durations (of transitions etc.), 255

## DV, xiv

- Capturing, 28, 30
- Data rate for capture, 249
- Outputting to, 242
- Storage calculation, 29

## DVD

- Image on hard drive, 234
- Importing video from, 33
- Menus, 55, *See* Disc menus
- MPEG encoding, 28
- Output movie to, 233
- Playback controls, 6, 11, 167
- Player control, 171
- Previewing, 171

## E

- Earthquake (video effect), 117
- Edit

- Video clips, 73
- Edit line
  - Clips inserted at, 75
- Edit menu button, 70
- Edit mode
  - Interface, 5
  - Introduced, 1
- Editing, 312
  - A/B, 127
  - Advanced, 65, 125
  - Disc menus, 172
  - Insert, 92
  - Split, 94
  - Still images, 154
- Editing photos and other images, 155
- Editor, Menu and Title, 181
- Effects
  - Audio. *See* Audio effects
  - Video. *See* Video effects
- Emboss (video effect), 115
- Equalizer (audio effect), 227
- Equipment requirements, xi

## F

- Fade
  - Adjusting balance on Timeline, 217
- Fade (transition), 143
- Fades
  - Default duration of, 255
- File
  - Saving movie to, 237
- File name
  - Project, 59
- File type
  - AVI, 238
  - DivX, 239
  - iPod compatible, 239
  - MPEG, 240
  - Real Media, 241
  - Sony PSP compatible, 241
  - Windows Media, 242
- File types

- AVI, 57
- Image, 54
- MP3, 57
- Music, 58
- Sound, 57
- WAV, 57
- Find Scene in Album command, 39
- Find Scene in Project command, 39
- Flags
  - Placing on menu track, 174
- Folders
  - Music, 58
  - Still images, 54
  - Titles, 54
- Fonts, 192
- Frame formats. *See* Aspect ratios
- Frame grabber, 161
  - Tool, 70, 152
  - Tool, described, 161
  - With HDV, 162
- Frame rate
  - Increasing, 280
- Full-screen images
  - Described, 152

## G

- Glossary, 321
- GOP
  - Closed, 324
  - Size, 328
- Grab frames tool
  - Described, 161
- Graphics
  - Editing, 155
- Groups
  - Temporary, In Title Editor, 190
- Grungelizer (audio effect), 228

## H

- Hard drive
  - Preparing for capture, 278

- Space for video capture, 29
- Speed for video capture, 29
- Hardware
  - Capture, 23
- HD, 329
- HDV, xiv, 329
  - Capturing, 30
- Help button, 3
- Highlighting
  - Of menu buttons, 200
- Hollywood FX
  - Activating, 52
  - And background rendering, 146
  - Editing, 145, 149
  - Previewing, 146
  - Transitions, 143, 144

## I

- Icons for effects
  - Audio, 224
  - Video, 80
- IEEE-1394, xiv
  - Cable, 242
- Images. *See* Still images
- Importing video from DVD, 33
- Insert edit
  - A/B, 127
- Insert editing, 92
  - Audio, 94
  - Introduced, 92
  - Method, 92
- Invert, 120

## J

- J-cut
  - A/B, 127
  - Defined, 94
  - Explained, 97
- Jog buttons, 9

## K

- Ken Burns, 155

- Keyboard conventions, xiv
- Keyframing (of video effects parameters), 103, 106

## L

- Layers
  - In Title Editor, 185
- L-cut
  - A/B, 127
  - Defined, 94
  - Explained, 95
- Lens flare (video effect), 117
- Letterboxing, 78
- Leveler (audio effect), 229
- Levels, Audio and video
  - In analog capture, 31
  - In DV capture, 30
- Lighting, 120
- Links
  - Adjusting, 174
  - Automatic creation of, 170
  - Creating, 174
  - Deleting, 174
  - Editing, 174
  - In disc menu tool, 178
  - On disc menus, 165
  - Repositioning, 174
  - Return to menu, 174
  - Setting with drag-and-drop, 179
  - Show numbers while editing, 176
- Locked content
  - Activating, 11
- Locking tracks, 65
  - Indication of, 91
- Long shots (videography tip), 313
- Luma key (video effect), 116

## M

- Magnify (video effect), 118
- Make Movie mode, 231
  - Introduced, 3
- Making movies, 231
- Media Player, 242

- Menu and Title Editor, 181
- Menu buttons
  - Highlighting, 200
- Menu commands, xiv
- Menu Editor. *See* Title Editor
- Menu links. *See* Links
- Menu track, 173
  - Editing, 174
  - Flags, 173
- Menus, Disc. *See* Disc menus
- Microphone
  - Connecting, 210
- Modes
  - Capture, 19
  - Edit, 5
  - Introduced, 1
  - Make Movie, 231
  - Setting, 3
- Monitors
  - Dual, 257
- Motion blur (video effect), 118
- Movie
  - Previewing, 6
- Movie Window, 59
  - Clipboard operations, 75
  - Drag-and-drop editing, 74
  - Find scene in Album, 39, 80
  - Interface features, 79
  - Positioning, 62
  - Status message area, 59
  - Trimming on the Timeline, 81
  - Views, 62
- MP3 files, 57
- MPEG
  - Capture options, 253
  - Captures from DV, 29
  - Encoding of DV captures, 28
  - For DVD etc., 28, 29
  - Quality options, 29
  - Rendering for output, 233
- Multiple capture files
  - Using, 76
- Multiple selection
  - In Title Editor, 190
- Multitrack editing, 125

- Music, 201, *See* Background music
  - Folder, 58
  - Section (of Album), 58
  - Selecting (videography tip), 319
- Music video. *See* SmartMovie
- Muting audio tracks, 66

## N

- Names
  - In Text and Storyboard view, 86
  - Of clips - changing, 86
- Noise reduction (audio effect), 225
- Noise reduction (video effect), 112
- NTSC, 247

## O

- Objects
  - In Title Editor, 184
- Old film (video effect), 115
- Optical disc. *See* Disc
- Optical disc summary, 236
- Options, 245
  - Aspect ratio for analog capture, 248
  - Audio for file output, 268
  - Capture devices, 246
  - Capture format, 250
  - Capture source, 246
  - Data rate, 249
  - Data rate and quality, 268
  - Frame rate, 268
  - Include video, 267, 269
  - List all codecs, 267, 269
  - Main dialog, 245
  - Make AVI file, 266
  - Make Disc, 262
  - Make Movie, 245
  - Make MPEG file, 266
  - Make Real Media file, 270
  - Make tape, 274
  - Make Windows Media file, 273
  - MPEG capture, 253
  - Organization of, 245

- Output to VGA display, 276
- Overlay for analog capture
  - preview, 247
- Preview during capture, 247
- Project preferences, 253
- Scene detection, 248
- Setting, 4
- TV standard, 247
- VCR input checkbox, 247
- Video and audio preferences, 257
- Video compression, 267
- Video for file output, 267
- Video preview, 257
- Original audio
  - Properties, 212
  - Synchronized with video, 90
- Original sounds
  - Preserving (videography tip), 318
- Output
  - Browser, 231
  - Media type, 231
  - To AVI file, 238
  - To DivX file, 239
  - To file, 237
  - To iPod compatible file, 239
  - To MPEG file, 240
  - To optical disc, 233
  - To Real Media file, 241
  - To Sony PSP compatible file, 241
  - To Tape, 242
  - To videotape, 243
  - To Windows Media, 242
- Overlay effects, 125
- Overlay images
  - Controlling transparency in, 153
  - Described, 152
- Overlay track, 125
  - Always show option, 126
  - Audio, 203
  - Audio, original, 126
  - Displaying, hiding, 126
  - Introduced, 125
  - Opening, 125
- Overlays track
  - And still images, 151

## P

- PAL, 247
- Pan and scan, 78
- Pan and zoom
  - Video effect, 160
- Pan-and-zoom
  - Animated, 157
  - Complex animations, 159
  - Photos, 156
  - Tool, 155
- Parameters for effects
  - Resetting, 103
- Parameters for plug-in effects
  - Presets, 102
- Parameters for video effects
  - Editing, 101
- Passport, 14
- Perspectives
  - Varying, 312
- Photos
  - Editing, 155
  - Panning and zooming, 156
  - Red-eye reduction, 156
  - Rotating, 156
- Picture-in-picture
  - Tool, 128
  - Video effect, 132
- Playback controls, 6
  - DVD, 6, 11, 167
  - Fast forward/reverse, 9
  - Go to beginning, 9
  - Jog buttons, 9
  - Loop, 9
  - Play/Pause, 8
  - Standard, 6, 8
- Playback speed
  - Changing, 113
- Player, 19
  - During Timeline trimming, 81
  - Introduced, 6
  - Previewing transitions, 53, 145
  - Scrubber, 9
- Player control
  - DVD, 171
- Plug-in effects

- Unlocking, 101, 110
- Plus audio effects pack, 226
- Plus RTFX video effects pack, 114
- Posterize (video effect), 120
- Premium button, 3
- Premium content and features, 15
- Presets for effects, 102
- Preview
  - During capture, 247
- Preview window, 6, 84
- Preview Window, 7
- Previewing
  - Discs, 171
  - Hollywood FX, 146
  - Menus, 6
  - Transitions, 53, 145
  - Video effects, 108
- Problems and solutions, 283
- Product names, xiii
- Progressive encoding (advanced output setting), 263
- Project. *See* Movie
- Project preferences (options panel), 253
- Project video format, 77
- Push (transition), 144

## R

- Razorblade button, 60
- Real Media
  - Files, 241
  - RealNetworks® RealPlayer®, 241
- RealNetworks® RealPlayer®
  - Viewing files with, 237
- Recording voice-overs, 208
  - Quality, 210
- Red-eye reduction
  - Explained, 156
  - Removing, 157
- Redo button, 3
- Rendering, 233
- Reordering objects
  - In three dimensions, 185

- Requirements, equipment, xi
- Return to menu link, 174
- Reverb (audio effect), 230
- RGB color balance (video effect), 121
- Ripple transition, 147, 153, 168

## S

- Save to disc, 233
- Save to file, 237
  - AVI, 238
  - DixX, 239
  - iPod compatible, 239
  - MPEG, 240
  - Real Media, 241
  - Sony PSP compatible, 241
  - Windows Media, 242
- Save to tape, 242
- Scanning, progressive vs. interlaced, 263
- Scene detection, 26, 27, 42
  - Menu commands, 50
  - Options, 248
- Scenes. *See* Video scenes
- Scenes (videography tip), 316
- Scrubber, 9
- Scrubbing audio, 60
- SCSI, xii
- Sepia (video effect), 121
- Set Thumbnail menu command, 42
- Settings. *See* Options
- Setup menu, 4
- Setup options, 245
- Slide (transition), 144
- Slideshow, 147, 153, 168
- Slow motion, 113
- SmartSound
  - Clip properties, 212
  - Duration of clips, 211
  - Tool, 72, 206
- Soften (video effect), 116
- Sound effects, 63, 201
  - Activating, 58

- Properties, 212
- Section (of Album), 57
- Sound files, 57
- Speed (video effect), 113
- Split Clip menu command, 89
- Split clip/scene button, 60, 89
  - In insert editing, 92
- Split edit
  - A/B, 127
- Split editing
  - Introduced, 94
- Splitting clips, 89
  - Restoring from, 89
- Stabilize (video effect), 112
- Stained glass (video effect), 116
- Start/stop capture button, 21
- Stereo
  - Adjusting balance on Timeline, 217
- Stereo Echo (audio effect), 230
- Stereo Spread (audio effect), 230
- Still images
  - Creating, 152
  - Default duration of, 255
  - Described, 151
  - Editing, 155
  - Folder, 54
  - Full-screen, 152
  - Full-screen vs. overlay, 151
  - Overlay, 152
  - Section (of Album), 54
  - Transparency in, 153
  - Trimming, 154
  - Trimming and editing, 154
  - Types, 151
- Still Images
  - Rotating, 156
- Storyboard view, 62, 63
- Studio Plus, 125
  - Audio effects, 224, 226
  - Keyframing, 103, 106
  - Video effects, 114
- Support button, 3
- Surround sound, 218
- S-VCD

- Menus, 55, *See* Disc menus
- MPEG encoding, 28
- Output movie to, 233
- Synchronization (of video and audio)
  - Overriding, 90

## T

- Tape
  - Saving movie to, 242
- Text editing
  - Advanced, 187
- Text view, 62, 67, 86
- Thumbnail frames
  - In Album, 42
  - Setting in disc menus, 177
  - With moving video, in menus, 177
- Timeline
  - Adjusting volume on, 216
  - Audio tracks, 203
  - Editing disc menus on, 172
  - Locking tracks, 91
  - Overlay video, 125
  - Placing disc menus on, 170
  - Tracks, 63
  - Trimming clips on, 81
- Timeline view, 62, 63
  - Advanced editing in, 90
  - Insert editing, 92
  - Splitting clips in, 89
- Timescale, 63
- Title
  - Choosing (videography tip), 319
  - Colors (videography tip), 319
- Title Editor, 181
  - Advanced text editing, 187
  - Introduced, 69
  - Launching, 182
  - Multiple selection in, 190
- Title Editor Album, 193
  - Backgrounds section, 195
  - Buttons section, 198
  - Looks Browser, 193
  - Pictures section, 197
- Title Editor controls

- Clipboard and delete buttons, 191
- Mode selection buttons, 187
- Object layout buttons, 189
- Object toolbox, 184
- Selection tool, 184
- Text styling, 191
- Title-type buttons, 183
- Title Editor objects, 184
  - Reordering layers, 185
  - Text, 186
- Title track
  - Locking, 91
- Titles
  - Crawls, 183
  - Creating, 181
  - Editing, 181
  - Folder, 54
  - Rolls, 183
  - Section (of Album), 53
- Titles and overlays track
  - And still images, 151
- Titles tool, 70
- Toolbox, 59
  - Audio, 71
  - Video, 70
- Toolboxes, 68
- Tools
  - Audio effects, 72, 223
  - Automatic background music, 72
  - CD audio, 72, 205
  - Chroma key, 133
  - Clip properties, 66, 70, 71, 86, 174, 211
  - Disc menu, 70, 179
  - Frame grabber, 70
  - Pan-and-zoom, 155
  - Picture-in-picture, 128
  - PIP and chroma key, 70
  - SmartMovie, 70, 122
  - SmartSound, 206
  - Titles, 70
  - Video effects, 70, 99
  - Voice-overs, 72, 208
  - Volume and balance, 71, 213, 218
- Track lock buttons, 91
- Tracks
  - Audio, 203, 204
  - Background music, 204
  - Indication when locked, 91
  - Locking, 65
  - Menu, 173
  - Muting and hiding, 66
  - Original audio, 203
  - Overlay, 125
  - Sound effect and voice-over, 203
  - Title, 91
  - Video, 65, 90
  - Video linked to audio, 92
- Transitions
  - Adding to movie, 141
  - Alpha Magic, 143
  - Criteria for selecting, 142
  - Cut, 143
  - Default duration of, 255
  - Described, 141
  - Displaying type, 52
  - Dissolve, 144
  - Effect on clip duration, 142
  - Fade, 143
  - Groups, 51
  - Hollywood FX, 143, 144
  - In audio, 146
  - Looping in preview, 149
  - Naming, 149
  - On Timeline, 141
  - Premium, 52
  - Previewing, 53, 145, 149
  - Reversing direction, 149
  - Ripple transition, 147, 153, 168
  - Section (of Album), 51
  - Setting duration of, 149
  - Standard (2D), 143
  - Three-dimensional, 144
  - Trimming, 148
  - Types of, 142
  - Videography tip, 313
  - Wipe, slide, push, 144
- Transparency
  - In overlay images, 153
- Transport controls
  - On-screen, 20, 22
- Trashcan button, 61
- Trim scrubber, 66

Trimming  
  Audio clips, 211  
  Described, 81  
  Introduced, 73  
  On the Timeline, 81  
  Still images, 154  
  Tips, 85  
  Transitions, 148  
  Undoing, 88  
  Video clips, 81  
  With Ctrl key, 84  
Troubleshooting, 283  
TV set  
  Simultaneous output to, 243

## U

UDMA, xii  
Undo button, 3  
Unlocking  
  Plug-in effects, 101, 110  
  Premium content, 11  
  Sound effects, 58  
USB video camera  
  Capturing from, 30  
Use keyframes (checkbox), 106

## V

VCD  
  Menus, 55, *See* Disc menus  
  MPEG encoding, 28  
  Output movie to, 233  
VGA  
  Output movie to, 276  
Video  
  Aspect ratios. *See* Aspect ratios  
  Capture. *See* Capture  
  Frame format. *See* Aspect ratios  
  Hiding, 66  
  Options, 32  
  Output hardware, xiii  
  Settings (for File output), 267  
Video and audio preferences  
  (options panel), 257

Video capture  
  Step-by-step, 25  
Video clips, 63  
  Applying effects to, 98  
  Changing name, 86  
  Changing playback speed, 113  
  Combining, 90  
  Editing, 73  
  Finding Album scene, 80  
  Interface features, 79  
  Properties tool, 87  
  Shortened by transition, 142  
  Splitting, 89  
  Synchronization with audio, 90  
  Trimming, 81  
  Trimming on the Timeline, 81  
  Trimming tips, 85  
  Undoing trim, 88  
  Using audio portion only, 75  
Video compression, 267  
Video effects, 98  
  2D editor, 117  
  Adding, 110  
  Adding and deleting, 100  
  Auto color correction, 111  
  Basic, 109  
  Black and white, 119  
  Blur, 114  
  Changing parameters, 101  
  Chroma key, 137  
  Cleaning effects, 111  
  Color correction, 119  
  Earthquake, 117  
  Emboss, 115  
  Icons, 80  
  Invert, 120  
  Keyframing, 103, 106  
  Lens flare, 117  
  Lighting, 120  
  Luma key, 116  
  Magnify, 118  
  Motion blur, 118  
  Noise reduction, 112  
  Old film, 115  
  Pan and zoom, 160  
  Picture-in-picture, 132  
  Plus RTFX, 114

- Posterize, 120
  - Presets, 102
  - Previewing and rendering, 108
  - RGB color balance, 121
  - Sepia, 121
  - Soften, 116
  - Speed, 113
  - Stabilize, 112
  - Stained glass, 116
  - Standard, 111
  - The effects list, 99
  - Tool, 99
  - Unlocking, 101
  - Water drop, 118
  - Water wave, 119
  - Video formats, 77
  - Video levels
    - Changing during capture, 20
    - In analog capture, 32
    - In DV capture, 30
  - Video monitor
    - Simultaneous output to, 243
  - Video preview
    - External, 257
    - Full-screen, 257
    - Options, 257
  - Video scene catalog, 167
  - Video scenes
    - Adding to movie, 73, 74
    - Album interface features, 39
    - Combining and subdividing, 48
    - Comments, 46
    - Displaying length of, 46
    - Finding in Album, 39
    - Folders, 40
    - In-use indicator, 39, 79
    - Neighboring, 80
    - Order of, 39
    - Redetecting, 50
    - Section (of Album), 38
    - Selecting, 45
    - Splitting, 60
    - Thumbnail frames, 42
    - Viewing, 43
  - Video Scenes section
    - Views, 46
  - Video toolbox, 70
  - Video track, 65, 75, 90
    - And still images, 151
    - Linked to audio track, 92
  - Videography, 311
  - Videotape
    - Output to, 243
  - Views, Movie Window
    - Storyboard, 62, 63
    - Text, 62, 67
    - Timeline, 62, 63
  - Voice-over tool, 208
  - Voice-overs, xii, 63
    - Properties, 212
    - Recording, 208
    - Recording quality options, 210
    - Volume, 209
  - Voice-overs tool, 72
  - Volume
    - Adjusting on Timeline, 216
    - Fades, Default duration of, 255
    - Mixing, 213, 218
    - Voice-over levels, 209
  - Volume and balance tool, 71, 213, 218
- ## W
- Water drop (video effect), 118
  - Water wave (video effect), 119
  - WAV files, 57
  - White balance, 121
  - Windows Media
    - Files, 242
    - Player, 242
  - Windows Media Player
    - Viewing files with, 237
  - Wipe (transition), 144